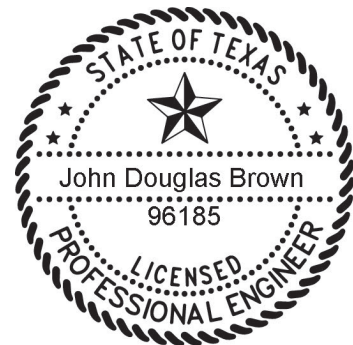


**COUNTY OF GALVESTON**  
**SPECIFICATIONS AND CONTRACT DOCUMENTS**

**HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY**  
**Bid # B211022**



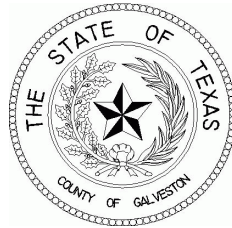
*John D. Brown* 12-14-2020

December 2020

# CONTENTS

Invitation to Bid – General Provisions .....	1
Certification Regarding Lobbying.....	57
Non-Collusion Affidavit.....	58
Bid Forms .....	59
Acknowledgment and Certification Regarding Debarment .....	62
Vendor Qualification Packet .....	63
Special Provisions for Construction.....	76
Prevailing Wage Rate.....	95
Bid Proposal.....	103
Contract Award.....	104
Affidavit and Surety Forms.....	106
Special Provisions to Items 1 through 9 .....	110
Specifications.....	120
Plans.....	Separate Document

**GALVESTON COUNTY  
PURCHASING DEPARTMENT**



**INVITATION TO BID**

**ITB #B211022**

**HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT**

**BID DUE DATE: 01/21/2021**

**2:00 P.M. CST**

***Rufus Crowder, CPPO, CPPB  
Purchasing Agent  
Galveston County  
722 Moody (21<sup>st</sup> Street)  
Fifth (5<sup>th</sup>) Floor  
Galveston, Texas 77550  
(409) 770-5372***



**INVITATION TO BID**  
**HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT**  
**GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS**

Sealed bids in sets of three (3), one (1) unbound original and two (2) copies will be received in the office of the County Purchasing Agent until **2:00 P.M. CST, on Thursday, January 21, 2021** and opened immediately in that office in the presence of the Galveston County Auditor and the Purchasing Agent. Sealed bids are to be delivered to Rufus G. Crowder, CPPO CPPB, Galveston County Purchasing Agent at the Galveston County Courthouse, 722 Moody (21<sup>st</sup> Street), Floor 5, Purchasing, Galveston, Texas 77550, (409) 770-5372. **The time stamp clock located in the Purchasing Agent's office shall serve as the official time keeping piece for this solicitation process. Any bids received after 2:00 P.M. CST on the specified date will be returned unopened.**

**Purpose:**

Galveston County is seeking a vendor for the re-construction of approximately 1,500 linear feet of the west bank of the Highland Bayou Diversion Canal, between F.M. 2004 and Jay Road Ditch in Hitchcock, Galveston County, Texas. The existing slope is at a gradient of about 3.5H: 1V in order to prevent further slope failures. In addition, the backslope swales (two) situated behind top of slope need to be reconstructed. Interceptor Swale "A" is approximately 700 linear feet and will outfall into Jay Road Ditch. Interceptor Swale "B" is also about 700 feet in length and will outfall into an existing drainage ditch situated between FM 2004 and the south side of Sunrise Creek subdivision.

All bids must be marked on the outside of the envelope:

**ITB #B211022, Highland Bayou Slope Stability Project**

Bids name and return address, should be prominently displayed on the bid package for identification purposes.

Bid Specifications can be obtained by visiting the Galveston County website @

<http://www.galvestoncountytexas.gov/pu/Pages/BidListing.aspx>

Bid prices shall be either lump sum or unit prices as shown on the bid sheet, if applicable. The net price will be delivered to Galveston County, including all freight, shipping, and license fees. Galveston County is tax exempt and no taxes should be included in your proposal pricing.

**A non-mandatory pre-bid conference will be held on Tuesday, January 5, 2021 at 10:00 a.m.**

Due to the COVID-19 pandemic, the County of Galveston has instituted measures to guard against the spread of the virus. This includes the prohibition of in-person meetings, social distancing, and stay-at-home requirements for employees.

The Pre-Bid Conference shall take place via video/tele-conference and the instructions are listed below and on the County's Purchasing website:

**Minimum System Requirements for Video Conferencing:**

1. High-resolution webcam;
2. Computer processing minimum: 2 GB of RAM and a quad-core processor;
3. Network bandwidth: 1 Mbps is sufficient for 15 fps at 720p resolution;

**Calling from a mobile device:**

1. Front facing camera;
2. In ear headphone with built in mic

**Instructions for Video Conferencing:**

1. [Click here](#) or navigate to <https://guest.lifesize.com/1907077>
2. Enter Name and email (optional);

3. Click the Terms of Service and Privacy Policy checkbox;
4. Click Join Meeting

**\*Note - be sure to enable audio and video.**

Copies of bid/Contract Documents may also be obtained from [www.Civcast.com](http://www.Civcast.com) search Highland Bayou Slope Stability Project. Bidders must register on this website in order to view and/or download specifications and plans for this project. There is NO charge to view or download documents. If copies of the bidding documents are to be mailed, please contact Raba Kistner, Inc. at 713.996.8990 for postage and handling. Return of documents is not required and no refund will be granted.

Upon satisfaction of contractual terms (e.g., goods delivered in promised condition, services rendered as agreed, etc.), contractor shall be paid via Galveston County's normal accounts payable process.

**Bonding Requirements:**

- **PROPOSAL GUARANTEE:** Evidencing its firm commitment to engage in the contract if Proposer is selected for award of contract, each Proposer is required to furnish with their proposal a Cashier's Check, or an acceptable Bidder's Bond, in the amount of five percent (5%) of the total contract price. The Bidder's Bond must be executed with a surety company authorized to do business in the State of Texas. Failure to furnish the bid/proposal guarantee in the proper form and amount, by the time set for opening of bids may be cause or rejection of the proposal.
- **PERFORMANCE AND PAYMENT BONDS:** Successful proposer, before beginning work, shall execute a performance bond and a payment bond, each of which must be in the amount of the contract. The required payment and performance bonds must each be executed by a corporate surety in accordance with Section 1, Chapter 87, Acts of the 56<sup>th</sup> Legislature, Regular Session, 1959 (Article 7.19-1, Vernon's Texas Insurance Code).

Attention is called to the fact that not less than, the federally determined prevailing (Davis-Bacon and Related Acts) wage rate, as issued by the Office of Rural Community Affairs and contained in the contract documents, must be paid on this project. In addition, the successful bidder must ensure that employees and applicants for employment are not discriminated against because of race, color, religion, sex age or national origin.

The Galveston County Commissioners' Court reserves the right to waive any informality and to reject any and all bids and to accept the bid or bids which, in its opinion, is most advantageous to Galveston County with total respect the governing laws.

All contractors/subcontractors that are debarred, suspended or otherwise excluded from or ineligible for participation on federal assistance programs may not undertake any activity in part or in full under this project

Rufus G. Crowder, CPPO CPPB  
Purchasing Agent  
Galveston County

**INVITATION TO BID  
HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT  
GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS**

**Table of Contents**

GENERAL PROVISIONS:

1.	BID PACKAGE.....	1
2.	BIDDER’S RESPONSIBILITY .....	1
3.	TIME FOR RECEIVING BIDS .....	1
4.	COMPETITIVENESS, INTEGRITY, INQUIRIES AND QUESTIONS .....	2
5.	BID OPENING .....	3
6.	WITHDRAWAL OF BID/FIRM BID RULE.....	3
7.	COMMISSIONERS COURT .....	3
8.	REJECTION OF BIDS/DISQUALIFICATION.....	3
9.	RESTRICTIVE OR AMBIGUOUS SPECIFICATIONS.....	4
10.	SUBSTITUTES/DESCRIPTION OF MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT .....	4
11.	EXCEPTIONS TO BID .....	4
12.	PRICING.....	4
13.	PROCUREMENT CARD (P-CARD) PROGRAM.....	5
14.	PASS THROUGH COST ADJUSTMENTS .....	5
15.	MODIFICATION OF BIDS .....	5
16.	PRE-BID CONFERENCE .....	6
17.	SIGNATURE OF BIDS.....	6
18.	AWARD OF BIDS – EVALUATION CRITERIA AND FACTORS .....	6
19.	DISPUTE AFTER AWARD/PROTEST .....	7
20.	PUBLIC INFORMATION ACT (f/k/a Open Records Act).....	8
21.	BIDDER’S E-MAIL ADDRESSES – CONSENT TO DISCLOSURE .....	8
22.	RESULTANT CONTRACT.....	8
23.	CONTRACT TERM.....	9
24.	TERMINATION FOR DEFAULT .....	9
25.	TERMINATION FOR CONVENIENCE.....	9
26.	FORCE MAJEURE .....	10

**INVITATION TO BID  
HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT  
GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS**

27.	ESTIMATED QUANTITIES .....	10
28.	CONTRACTOR INVESTIGATION.....	10
29.	NO COMMITMENT BY COUNTY OF GALVESTON.....	10
30.	BID COSTS BORNE BY BIDDER .....	10
31.	BEST AND FINAL OFFIERS (BAFO).....	11
32.	SINGLE BID RESPONSE.....	11
33.	CHANGES IN SPECIFICATIONS.....	11
34.	BID IDEAS AND CONCEPTS.....	11
35.	BID DISCLOSURES.....	11
36.	INDEMNIFICATION.....	11
37.	REQUIREMENT OF AND PROOF OF INSURANCE .....	12
38.	BID GUARANTEE .....	13
39.	PERFORMANCE AND PAYMENT BONDS (if required) .....	14
40.	PATENT AND COPYRIGHT PROTECTION.....	14
41.	CONFLICT OF INTEREST DISCLOSURE REPORTING (FORM CIQ) .....	15
42.	DISCLOSURE OF INTERESTED PARTIES/FORM 1295 .....	16
43.	CERTIFICATION REGARDING DEBARMENT, SUSPENSION, PROPOSED DEBARMENT, AND OTHER RESPONSIBILITY MATTERS & REQUIREMENT TO REGISTER IN SAM.....	17
44.	SOVEREIGN IMMUNITY .....	18
45.	CONTROLLING LAW AND VENUE.....	18
46.	MERGERS, ACQUISITIONS.....	18
47.	DELAYS.....	18
48.	ACCURACY OF DATA .....	18
49.	SUBCONTRACTING/ASSIGNMENT .....	19
50.	INDEPENDENT CONTRACTOR.....	19
51.	MONITORING PERFORMANCE .....	19
52.	SUBJECT TO APPROPRIATION OF FUNDS.....	19
53.	CONTRACTS SUBJECT TO GRANT FUNDING .....	19
54.	PROCUREMENT ETHICS.....	19
55.	NON-COLLUSION AFFIDAVIT.....	21

**INVITATION TO BID  
HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT  
GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS**

56. CERTIFICATION REGARDING LOBBYING ..... 22  
57. NON-DISCRIMINATION ..... 22  
58. RECORD RETENTION AND RIGHT TO AUDIT ..... 23  
59. TITLE VI ASSURANCES/TxDOT..... 23  
60. SECTION 231.006, FAMILY CODE/DELINQUENT CHILD SUPPORT ..... 24  
61. ANTITRUST ..... 25  
62. LABOR STANDARDS ..... 25  
63. PROCUREMENT LAWS..... 25  
64. ENTIRETY OF AGREEMENT AND MODIFICATION..... 30  
65. NOTICE..... 30  
66. USE OF DHS SEAL, LOGO, AND FLAGS PROHIBITED WITHOUT PRIOR APPROVAL..... 31  
67. FEDERAL GOVERNMENT NOT A PARTY..... 31  
68. PROGRAM FRAUD AND FALSE OR FRAUDULENT STATEMENTS OR RELATED ACTS..... 31  
69. LEAD AND ASBESTOS ..... 31  
70. ACKNOWLEDGMENT OF GOVERNMENT RECORD..... 32  
71. COMPLIANCE WITH GALVESTON COUNTY PURCHASING POLICIES AND PROCEDURES ..... 32



**GENERAL PROVISIONS – INVITATION TO BID  
HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT  
GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS**

**1. BID PACKAGE**

*The Invitation to Bid, general and special provisions, drawings, specifications/line item details, contract documents and the Bid sheet are all part of the Bid package. **BIDs must be submitted in sets of three (3), one (1) unbound original and two (2) copies** on the forms provided by the County if County forms are provided, including the Bid sheets completed in their entirety and signed by an authorized representative by original signature. Failure to complete and sign the Bid sheets/contract page(s) may disqualify the Bid from being considered by the Commissioners' Court. Any individual signing on behalf of the Bidder expressly affirms that he or she is duly authorized to tender this Bid and to sign the Bid sheet/contract under the terms and conditions in this bid on behalf of the Bidder and to bind the Bidder to the terms and conditions of this bid and the Bidder's response hereto. Bidder further understands that its' signing of the contract shall be of no effect unless the contract is subsequently awarded by the Commissioners' Court and the contract properly executed by the Commissioners' Court. All figures must be written in ink or typed. Figures written in pencil or with erasures are not acceptable. However, mistakes may be crossed out, corrections inserted, and initialed in ink by the individual signing the bid. If there are discrepancies between unit prices quoted and extensions, the unit price shall prevail. Each Bidder is required to thoroughly review this entire Bid package to familiarize themselves with the Bid procedures, the plans and specifications for the requested work, as well as the terms and conditions of the contract the successful Bidder will execute with the County.*

**2. BIDDER'S RESPONSIBILITY**

The Bidder must affirmatively demonstrate its responsibility. The Bidder must also meet the following minimum requirements:

- A. have adequate financial resources or the ability to obtain such resources as required;
- B. be able to comply with all federal, state, and local laws, rules, regulations, ordinances and orders regarding this Invitation to Bid;
- C. have a satisfactory record of performance;
- D. have a satisfactory record of integrity and ethics; and
- E. be otherwise qualified and eligible to receive an award.

**3. TIME FOR RECEIVING BIDS**

Bids may be submitted by mail or hand delivery and **must be submitted only to the Galveston County Purchasing Agent**. If by delivery, the Bidder must deliver to the reception desk in the County Purchasing Agent's Office. The delivery and mailing instructions for the Galveston County Purchasing Agent are the following:

**Rufus Crowder, CPPO CPPB  
Galveston County Purchasing Agent  
722 Moody, Fifth (5<sup>th</sup>) Floor  
Galveston, Texas 77550**

Bids will **not** be accepted by facsimile transmission or by electronic mail (email) unless superseded by instructions within the Special Provisions sections of this solicitation. Bids must be received by the County Purchasing Agent on or before the deadline for the opening of the bids. For clarity, mailing date/postmark is **not** sufficient – bids **must be received** by the County Purchasing Agent on or before the deadline. Late bids will not be accepted and will be

**GENERAL PROVISIONS – INVITATION TO BID  
HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT  
GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS**

returned to the bidder unopened. Bids received prior to the submission deadline will be maintained unopened until the specified time for opening.

The County Purchasing Agent will accept bids from 8:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m. on each business day up to the submission deadline. Business days do not include Saturdays and Sundays, and do not include other days in which the County is closed for business in observance of holidays or for other reasons.

*The time-stamp clock within the County Purchasing Agent's Office shall be the official time-clock for the purpose of this solicitation and thus shall be the determinant of whether the bid was timely received.*

**The bidder should prominently identify the procurement number and name on the outside of the envelope/ mailing package.** A label shall be provided for this purpose and usage of the label is preferred. If the bidder fails to identify the bid on the outside of the envelope as required, the Purchasing Agent will open the envelope for the sole purpose of identifying the bid number for which the submission was made. The envelope will then be resealed. No liability will attach to a County office or employee for the premature opening of a bid.

If a bid is not submitted, return this Invitation to Bid and state reason (s), otherwise your name may be removed from the Purchasing Agent's mailing list.

**4. COMPETITIVENESS, INTEGRITY, INQUIRIES AND QUESTIONS**

To prevent biased evaluations and to preserve the competitiveness and integrity of the procurement process, **bidders are to direct all communications regarding this invitation to bid only to the Galveston County Purchasing Agent**, unless otherwise specifically noted.

**Do not contact the requesting department.** Attempts by offering firms to circumvent this requirement will be viewed negatively and may result in rejection of the bid of the firm found to be in non-compliance.

**All questions regarding this Invitation to Bid must be submitted in writing to:**

**Rufus Crowder, CPPO CPPB, Purchasing Agent**  
722 Moody  
Fifth (5<sup>th</sup>) Floor  
Galveston, Texas 77550  
Fax: (409) 621-7997  
E-mail: [purchasing.bids@co.galveston.tx.us](mailto:purchasing.bids@co.galveston.tx.us)

All questions received and the responses thereto will be mailed, emailed, or faxed to all prospective bidders by addendum. No inquiries except clarification of instructions will be addressed by telephone.

Bidder is advised to carefully review this Invitation to Bid – it provides specific information necessary to aid participating firms in formulating a thorough response. Bidder's failure to examine all documents shall not entitle the bidder to any relief from the conditions imposing in the Invitation to Bid and the resultant contract.

**An authorized person from the bidder must sign the bid.** This signatory must be a person from the submitting firm who is duly authorized to tender and sign the bid on behalf of the bidder and to bind the bidder to the terms and conditions of this Invitation to Bid, the bidder's response, and all other terms and conditions of the contract. By this

**GENERAL PROVISIONS – INVITATION TO BID  
HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT  
GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS**

signature, the bidder further acknowledges that the bidder has read the bid documents thoroughly before submitting a bid and will fulfill the obligations in accordance to the terms, conditions, and specifications detailed herein.

**5. BID OPENING**

The Purchasing Agent shall open the bids on the date and time specified herein. Information read aloud at the bid opening is at the sole discretion of the Purchasing Agent. The Purchasing Agent will examine bids promptly and thoroughly.

**6. WITHDRAWAL OF BID/FIRM BID RULE**

Bidders may request withdrawal of their sealed bid prior to the scheduled bid opening time provided the request for withdrawal is submitted to the Purchasing Agent in writing. No bids may be withdrawn for a period of sixty (60) calendar days after opening of the bids.

**7. COMMISSIONERS COURT**

No contract is binding on the County until it is properly placed on the Commissioners Court agenda, approved in open Court, authorized to be executed by the County Judge, and fully executed by both parties.

Department heads and elected officials are not authorized to enter into any type of agreement or contract on behalf of the County. Only the Commissioners Court acting as a body may enter into a contract on behalf of and contractually bind the County. Additionally, department heads and elected officials are not authorized to agree to any type of supplemental agreements or contracts for goods or services. Supplemental agreements are subject to review by the County Legal Department prior to being accepted and signed by the County's authorized representative.

**8. REJECTION OF BIDS/DISQUALIFICATION**

Galveston County, acting through its Commissioners Court, reserves the right to:

- reject any and all Bids in whole or in part received by reason of this Invitation to Bid;
- waive any informality in the Bids received;
- disregard the Bid of any Bidder determined to be not responsible;
- disregard the Bid of any Bidder determined to have not submitted its Bid timely; and/or;
- discontinue its efforts for any reason under this Bid package at any time prior to actual execution of contract by the County.

Bidders may be disqualified and rejection of Bids may be recommended to the Commissioners Court for any of (but not limited to) the following causes:

- A. Failure to use the bid forms furnished by the County, if applicable;
- B. Lack of signature by an authorized representative of bidder;
- C. Failure to properly complete the bid;
- D. Engaging in communications regarding this procurement during the pendency of this procurement with County officials and/or personnel who are not within the Purchasing Agent's Office;
- E. Failure to meet the mandatory requirements of this invitation to bid; and/or

**GENERAL PROVISIONS – INVITATION TO BID  
HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT  
GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS**

F. Evidence of collusion among bidders.

**9. RESTRICTIVE OR AMBIGUOUS SPECIFICATIONS**

It is the responsibility of the prospective Bidder to review the entire Invitation to Bid packet and to notify the Purchasing Agent if the specifications are formulated in a manner that would restrict competition or appear ambiguous. Any protest or question(s) regarding the specifications or Bid procedures must be received in the Purchasing Agent's Office not less than seventy-two (72) hours prior to the time set for Bid opening. Bidders are to submit their Bid as specified herein or propose an approved equal.

**10. SUBSTITUTES/DESCRIPTION OF MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT**

Any brand name or manufacturer reference used herein is intended to be descriptive and not restrictive, unless otherwise noted, and is used to indicate the type and quality of material. The term "or equal" if used, identifies commercially produced items that have the essential performance and salient characteristics of the brand name stated in the item description. All supplies, material, or equipment shall be new and of the most suitable grade for the purpose intended. For clarification, "new" includes products containing recovered materials that are EPA-designated items and additionally see Section 63 of these General Provisions on contracts involving federal funds. It is not the County's intent to discriminate against any materials or equipment of equal merit to those specified. However, if Bidder desires to use any substitutions, prior written approval must be obtained from the Purchasing Agent and sufficiently in advance such that an addendum may be issued. All material supplied must be one hundred percent (100%) asbestos free. Bidder, by submission of its bid, certifies that if awarded any portion of this procurement, the bidder will supply only material and equipment that is 100% asbestos free.

**11. EXCEPTIONS TO BID**

The Bidder will list on a separate sheet of paper any exceptions to the conditions of the bid. This sheet will be labeled, "Exceptions to Bid Conditions", and will be attached to the bid. If no exceptions are stated, it will be understood that all general and special conditions will be complied with, without exception.

The Bidder must specify in its Bid any alternatives it wishes to propose for consideration by the County. Each alternative should be sufficiently described and labeled within the Bid and should indicate its possible or actual advantage to the program being offered.

The County reserves the right to offer these alternatives to other Bidders.

**12. PRICING**

Bids will be either lump sum or unit prices as shown on the Bid sheet. The net priced items will be delivered to Galveston County, including all freight, shipping, and delivery charges.

Cash discount must be shown on bid, otherwise prices will be considered net. Unless prices and all information requested are complete, Bid may be disregarded and given no consideration.

In case of default by the contractor, the County of Galveston may procure the articles or services from other sources and may deduct from any monies due, or that may thereafter become due to the contractor, the difference between the

**GENERAL PROVISIONS – INVITATION TO BID  
HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT  
GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS**

price named in the contract of purchase order and the actual cost thereof to the County of Galveston. Prices paid by the County of Galveston shall be considered the prevailing market price at the time such purchase is made. Periods of performance may be extended if the facts as to the cause of delay justify such extension in the opinion of the Purchasing Agent and the Commissioners' Court.

**13. PROCUREMENT CARD (P-CARD) PROGRAM**

The County of Galveston participates in a Procurement Card (P-Card) program that allows payments made to a vendor by credit card. This method typically results in substantially faster bill payments, sometimes within three (3) to five (5) days of the actual transaction date. All transaction fees from the card provider are to be paid by the successful contractor. If your company will accept payment via credit card (Visa, MasterCard), please notate this in your Bid submittal.

**14. PASS THROUGH COST ADJUSTMENTS**

Except in instances of extreme extenuating circumstances Contractor prices shall remain firm throughout the contract period and any renewals. Examples of extreme extenuating circumstances include such situations as a nationwide rail strike, oil shortage or oil embargo.

In extreme extenuating circumstances, Contractors may be allowed to temporarily "pass through" additional costs they are forced to incur through no fault of their own. A request for a pass through cost increase will not be considered unless a Contractor's cost for the Contractor's product exceeds 10% over the original cost for the product. Also, the increase in cost must be nationwide and consistent for a minimum period of sixty (60) days. Costs that historically are anticipated to rise over a period of time (for example only, such as wages or insurance costs) do not qualify for pass through. If a Contractor thinks he will be asking for a pass through cost adjustment during the term of the contract, then the original cost of the product to Contractor must be stated in Contractor's original bid.

A request for a pass through cost does not guarantee that one will be granted. Contractors must submit such information on each request as required by the County Purchasing Agent. The County Purchasing Agent will review each request on a case-by-case basis and if valid, submit the request to Commissioners Court for authorization and determination of the appropriateness of each request as well as amount and duration of increase. Contractors will not be permitted any additional compensation for mark-ups or profits based on the increase in price. Rather, such additional compensation will be limited to the actual increase in original cost to the Contractor as such increase is reflected by the original cost stated in the bid. But in no event will the amount of additional compensation exceed 25% increase in Contractor's original cost for the product as such cost is reflected in Contractor's original Bid or the duration exceed a period of sixty (60) days. In addition should the cost, during the period of the pass through, return to normal or decrease to below pre pass through prices, appropriate downward adjustments shall be made. No more than one pass through adjustment will be permitted per year.

**15. MODIFICATION OF BIDS**

A Bidder may modify a bid by letter at any time prior to the submission deadline for receipt of Bids. Modification requests must be received prior to the submission deadline. Modifications made before opening time must be initialed by Bidder guaranteeing authenticity. Bids may not be amended or altered after the official opening with the single exception that any product literature and/or supporting data required by the actual specifications, if any, will be accepted at any time prior to the Commissioners' Court considering of same.

**GENERAL PROVISIONS – INVITATION TO BID  
HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT  
GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS**

**16. PRE-BID CONFERENCE**

A pre-bid conference for the purpose of discussing contract requirements and answering questions of prospective bidders may be conducted in this procurement. A pre-bid conference may be mandatory or voluntary. If the pre-bid conference is mandatory, then the County is authorized to condition acceptance of a bid on compliance with attendance. The Special Provisions of this procurement shall specify if a pre-bid conference is to be held and shall specify whether the pre-bid conference is mandatory or voluntary. Only a principal, officer, or employee of the bidder may represent the bidder at the pre-bid conference and no person may represent more than one bidder at the pre-bid conference.

**17. SIGNATURE OF BIDS**

Each Bid shall give the complete mailing address of the Bidder and be signed by an authorized representative by original signature with the authorized representative's name and legal title typed below the signature line. Each bid shall include the Bidder's Federal Employer Identification Number (FEIN). Failure to sign the Contract page(s) and bid response sheets may disqualify the bid from being considered by the County. The person signing on behalf of the Bidder expressly affirms that the person is duly authorized to tender the bid and to sign the bid sheets and contract under the terms and conditions of this Invitation to Bid and to bind the Bidder thereto and further understands that the signing of the contract shall be of no effect until it is properly placed on the Commissioners' Court agenda, approved in open Court, authorized to be executed by the County Judge, and fully executed by both parties.

**18. AWARD OF BIDS – EVALUATION CRITERIA AND FACTORS**

The award will be made to the responsible Bidder whose bid is determined to be the lowest and best evaluated offer demonstrating the best ability to fulfill the requirements set forth in this Invitation to Bid. **The proposed cost to the County will be considered firm and cannot be altered after the submission deadline.**

**“Lowest and best” means a bid or offer providing the best value considering associated direct and indirect costs, including transport, maintenance, reliability, life cycle, warranties, and customer service after a sale.**

In determining the lowest and best bid for a contract for the purchase of earth-moving, material-handling, road maintenance, or construction equipment, the Commissioners Court may also consider the information submitted under Section 262.0255 of the Local Government Code; and in determining the lowest and best bid for a contract for the purchase of road construction material, the Commissioners Court may consider the pickup and delivery locations of the bidders and the cost to the county of delivering or hauling the material to be purchased. The Commissioners Court may award contracts for the purchase of road construction material to more than one bidder if each of the selected bidders submits the lowest and best bid for a particular location or type of material.

Each Bidder, by submitting a bid, agrees that if its' bid is accepted by the Commissioners' Court, such Bidder will furnish all items and services upon which prices have been tendered and upon the terms and conditions in this bid and contract.

The contractor shall commence work only after the transmittal of a fully executed contract and after receiving written notification to proceed from the County Purchasing Agent. The contractor will perform all services indicated in the bid in compliance with this contract.

Neither department heads nor elected officials are authorized to sign any binding contracts or agreements prior to being properly placed on the Commissioners' Court agenda and approved in open court. Department heads and other elected officials are not authorized to enter into any type of agreement or contract on behalf of Galveston County. Only the Commissioners' Court, acting as a body, may enter into a contract on behalf of the County. Additionally,

**GENERAL PROVISIONS – INVITATION TO BID  
HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT  
GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS**

department heads and other elected officials are not authorized to agree to any type of supplemental agreements or contracts for goods or services. Supplemental agreements are subject to review by the County Legal Department prior to being signed by the County's authorized representatives.

The County of Galveston reserves the right to accept bids on individual items listed, or group items, or on the bid as a whole; to reject any and all bids; to waive any informality in the bids; to disregard the bids that are not submitted timely; to disregard the bids of bidders determined to be not responsible; and to accept the bid that appears to be in the best interest of the County. The selection process may, however, include a request for additional information or an oral presentation to support the written bid.

In determining and evaluating the best bid, the pricing may not necessarily be controlling, but quality, equality, efficiency, utility, general terms, delivery, suitability of the service offered, and the reputation of the service in general use will also be considered along with any other relevant items. The Commissioners' Court shall be the sole judge in the determination of these matters.

The County reserves the right to reject any or all Bids in whole or in part received by reason of this Invitation to Bid and may discontinue its efforts under this Invitation to Bid for any reason or no reason or solely for the County's convenience at any time prior to actual execution of the contract by the County.

**A Bidder whose bid does not meet the mandatory requirements set forth in this Invitation to Bid may be considered non-compliant.**

The invitation to submit a bid which appears in the newspaper, or other authorized advertising mediums, these general provisions, the specifications which follow, the Bid sheets, and any addenda issued are all considered part of the Bid.

Each Bidder, by submitting a bid, agrees that if its bid is accepted by the Commissioners' Court, such Bidder will furnish all items and services upon the terms and conditions in this Invitation to Bid and the resultant contract.

Notice of contract award is anticipated to be made within ninety (90) days of opening of Bids to the lowest responsive and responsible contractor, whose bid complies with all the requirements in the Invitation to Bid.

Contractor shall submit to the County, for approval, within ten (10) days from notice of contract award, all Certificates of Insurance evidencing the required coverage as described under Section 35, Requirement of and Proof of Insurance, or if different, then as described within the Special Provisions or resultant contract.

The contractor shall not commence work under these terms and conditions of the contract until all applicable Purchase Orders, Certificates of Insurance, Performance and Payment Bonds, and Irrevocable Letters of Credit (if required) have been approved by the County of Galveston and the Contractor has received notice to proceed in writing and an executed copy of the contract from the County Purchasing Agent.

**19. DISPUTE AFTER AWARD/PROTEST**

Any actual or prospective Bidder who is allegedly aggrieved in connection with the solicitation of this Invitation to Bid or award of a contract resulting therefrom may protest. The protest shall be submitted in writing to the Purchasing Agent within seven (7) calendar days after such aggrieved person knows of or should have known of the facts giving rise thereto. If the protest is not resolved by mutual agreement, the Purchasing Agent will promptly issue a decision in writing to the protestant. If the protestant wishes to appeal the decision rendered by the Purchasing Agent, such appeal must be made to the Commissioners' Court through the Purchasing Agent. The decision of the

**GENERAL PROVISIONS – INVITATION TO BID  
HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT  
GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS**

Commissioners' Court will be final. The Commissioners' Court need not consider protests unless this procedure is followed.

**20. PUBLIC INFORMATION ACT (f/k/a Open Records Act)**

The bidder acknowledges that the County is a government body for purposes of the Public Information Act, codified as Chapter 552 of the Texas Government Code, and as such is required to release information in accordance with the provisions of the Public Information Act.

**If bidder considers any of its submitted information to be proprietary in nature, trade secret, or otherwise confidential, then it must clearly and conspicuously mark such information as proprietary, trade, secret, or confidential. By the submission of its bid, Bidder expressly affirms that it has clearly and conspicuously marked any information within its submission that Bidder considers confidential, proprietary, and/or trade secret.**

In the event the County receives a request for information under the Public Information Act seeking information that the Bidder has marked as confidential, proprietary, and /or trade secret, then the County agrees that it shall provide notice to the Bidder of the request for information and the request for decision process under the Public Information Act. Thus, the County will submit the initial correspondence to the Texas Attorney General – however, the burden is and shall be on the Bidder to submit correspondence to the Attorney General if the Bidder wishes its information to be withheld. Bidder is deemed to have knowledge of the Public Information Act. **By the submission of its bid, bidder expressly acknowledges that the burden to withhold its' information from public disclosure lays with the bidder;** thus, bidder further acknowledges and agrees that it shall submit comments to the Texas Attorney General in the request for decision process if bidder wishes to have its' information withheld from public disclosure.

**21. BIDDER'S E-MAIL ADDRESSES – CONSENT TO DISCLOSURE**

Notwithstanding the foregoing Section 19, Bidder acknowledges and agrees that the confidentiality of any and all email addresses Bidder uses or discloses in communicating with the County are **open** to the public in accordance with Section 552.137 of the Government Code and Bidder consents to the release of its email addresses.

**22. RESULTANT CONTRACT**

Bidder shall correctly and fully execute the resultant contract first. After this, the contract shall be set for consideration by the Commissioners' Court. If the Commissioners' Court authorizes the execution of the contract, the resultant contract shall become effective upon the Commissioners' Court execution of same, provided that the contract is executed by all parties to the contract. Contract documents shall consist of the contract, the General and Special Provisions, drawings, bid package (including best and final offer(s) if such is utilized), any addenda issued, and any change orders issued during the work. If applicable to the attached bid, bidder must sign three (3) original contracts and return all three with their bid submittal.

Bidder should submit a proposed contract with its Bid or its sample material terms and conditions for review and consideration.



**GENERAL PROVISIONS – INVITATION TO BID  
HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT  
GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS**

**23. CONTRACT TERM**

The term of the resultant contract will begin on the date of full execution or the execution by the Commissioners' Court, whichever is later, and will terminate on the date specified in the resultant contract unless terminated earlier as herein set forth.

**24. TERMINATION FOR DEFAULT**

Failure of either party in the performance of any of the provisions of this contract shall constitute a breach of contract, in which case either party may require corrective action within ten (10) business days from date of receipt of written notice citing the exact nature of such breach. Failure of the party being notified to take corrective action within the prescribed ten (10) business days, or failure to provide written reply of why no breach has occurred, shall constitute a Default of Contract.

All notices relating to default by Bidder of the provisions of the contract shall be issued by the County through its Legal Department, and all replies shall be made in writing to the County Legal Department. Notices issued by or issued to anyone other than the County Legal Department shall be null and void and shall be considered as not having been issued or received.

Galveston County reserves the right to enforce the performance of this contract in any manner prescribed by law in the event of breach or default of this contract, and may contract with another party, with or without solicitation of bids or further negotiations. At a minimum, Bidder shall be required to pay any difference in service or materials, should it become necessary to contract with another source, plus reasonable administrative costs and attorney fees.

In the event of Termination for Default, Galveston County, its agents or representatives shall not be liable for loss of any profits anticipated to be made by Bidder.

In addition to the remedies stated herein, the County has the right to pursue other remedies permitted by law or in equity.

No waiver by either party of any event of default under this agreement shall operate as a waiver of any subsequent default under the terms of this agreement.

County reserves the right to terminate this contract immediately in the event Bidder:

- A. Fails to meet delivery or completion schedules; and/or
- B. Fails to otherwise perform in accordance with the accepted Bid and the contract.

**25. TERMINATION FOR CONVENIENCE**

County may terminate this contract upon at least thirty (30) calendar days prior written notice for its convenience or for any reason deemed by the County to serve the public interest. As well, County may terminate this contract upon thirty (30) calendar days prior written notice for any reason resulting from any governmental law, order, ordinance, regulation, or court order. In no event shall County be liable for loss of any profits anticipated to be made hereunder by Bidder should this contract be terminated early.

**GENERAL PROVISIONS – INVITATION TO BID  
HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT  
GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS**

**26. FORCE MAJEURE**

If by reason of Force Majeure either Party shall be rendered unable, wholly or in part, to carry out its responsibilities under this contract by any occurrence by reason of Force Majeure, then the Party unable to carry out its responsibility shall give the other Party notice and full particulars of such Force Majeure in writing within a reasonable time after the occurrence of the event, and such notice shall suspend the Party's responsibility for the continuance of the Force Majeure claimed, but for no longer period.

Force Majeure means acts of God, floods, hurricanes, tropical storms, tornadoes, earthquakes, or other natural disasters, acts of a public enemy, acts of terrorism, sovereign conduct, riots, civil commotion, strikes or lockouts, and other causes that are not occasioned by either Party's conduct which by the exercise of due diligence the Party is unable to overcome and which substantially interferes with operations.

**27. ESTIMATED QUANTITIES**

Any reference to quantities shown in the Invitation to Bid is an estimate only. Since the exact quantities cannot be predetermined, the County reserves the right to adjust quantities as deemed necessary to meet its requirements.

**28. CONTRACTOR INVESTIGATION**

Before submitting a bid, each Bidder shall make all investigations and examinations necessary to ascertain all site conditions and requirements affecting the full performance of the contract and to verify any representations made by the County upon which the contractor will rely. Bidder shall exercise due diligence and is further charged with knowledge of the local, State, and Federal laws, rules, and regulations applicable to this contract. If the bidder receives an award as a result of its bid submission in this procurement, the bidder's failure to have made such investigations and examinations will in no way relieve the bidder from its obligation to comply in every detail with all provisions and requirements of the contract, nor will a plea of ignorance of such conditions and requirements be accepted as a basis for any claim whatsoever by the contractor for additional compensation and/or for excused nonperformance.

**29. NO COMMITMENT BY COUNTY OF GALVESTON**

This Invitation to Bid does not commit the County of Galveston to award any costs or pay any costs, or to award any contract, or to pay any costs associated with or incurred in the preparation of a bid in response to this Invitation to Bid and does not commit the County of Galveston to procure or contract for services or supplies.

**30. BID COSTS BORNE BY BIDDER**

Galveston County shall not be liable for any costs incurred by Bidder in preparation, production, or submission of a bid, including but not limited to best and final offer if applicable. As well, Galveston County shall not be liable for any work performed by Bidder prior to issuance of fully executed contract and properly issued notice to proceed. Galveston County shall not be liable for any costs incurred by Bidder by reason of attending a pre-Bid conference. Galveston County shall not be liable for any costs incurred by Bidder by reason of the County invoking use of best and final offers.

**GENERAL PROVISIONS – INVITATION TO BID  
HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT  
GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS**

**31. BEST AND FINAL OFFIERS (BAFO)**

Not applicable.

**32. SINGLE BID RESPONSE**

If only one bid is received in response to the Invitation to Bid, a detailed cost bid may be requested of the single bidder. A cost/price analysis and evaluation and/or audit may be performed of the cost bid in order to determine if the price is fair and reasonable.

**33. CHANGES IN SPECIFICATIONS**

If it becomes necessary to revise any part of this bid, a written notice of such revision will be provided to all Bidders in the form of addenda. The County is not bound by any oral representations, clarifications, or changes made in the written specifications by the County's employees or officials, unless such clarification or change is provided to Bidders in a written addendum from the Purchasing Agent. Bidders are advised to inquire prior to the submission deadline as to whether any addenda to this invitation to bid have been issued, as the successful bidder will be required to abide by such addenda.

The County of Galveston reserves the right to revise or amend the specifications up to the time set for opening of bids. Such revisions and amendments, if any, shall be announced by form of addenda. Copies of such addenda (or addendum in the event only one addendum is issued in the procurement) shall be furnished to all prospective contractors. Prospective contractors are defined as those contractors listed on the County's Invitation to Bid list for this material/service or those who have obtained documents from the Purchasing Agent's Office subsequent to the advertisement. If revisions and amendments require changes in quantities or prices proposed, or both, the date set for opening of bids may be postponed by such number of days as in the opinion of the County shall enable contractors to revise their bids. In any case, the bid opening shall be at least seven (7) business days after the last revising or amendment addendum and the addendum shall include an announcement of the new date, if applicable, for the opening of bids.

**34. BID IDEAS AND CONCEPTS**

The County reserves to itself the right to adopt or use for its benefit, any concept, plan, or idea contained in any bid.

**35. BID DISCLOSURES**

While this procurement is pending, the names of those who submitted bids will not be made public unless in conformity with the County Purchasing Act. Likewise, no pricing or staffing information will be released unless in conformity with the County Purchasing Act. Bidders are requested to withhold all inquiries regarding their bid or other submissions until after an award is made. No communication is to be had with any County employee or official, other than the County Purchasing Agent, regarding whether a bid was received - violations of this provision may result in the rejection of a bid.

**36. INDEMNIFICATION**

**The contractor agrees to assume all risks and responsibility for, and agrees to indemnify, defend, and save harmless, the County of Galveston, its elected and appointed officials and department heads, agents and**

**GENERAL PROVISIONS – INVITATION TO BID  
HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT  
GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS**

**employees from and against all claims, demands, suits, actions, recoveries, judgments, and costs and expenses including reasonable attorney’s fees for the defense thereof arising out of or in connection therewith on account of the loss of life, property or injury or damage to the person which shall arise from contractor’s operations under this contract, its use of County facilities and/or equipment or from any other breach on the part of the contractor, its employees, agents or any person(s), in or about the County’s facilities with the expressed or implied consent of the County. Contractor shall pay any judgment with cost which may be obtained against Galveston County resulting from contractor’s operations under this contract.**

**Contractor agrees to indemnify and hold the County harmless from all claims of subcontractors, laborers incurred in the performance of this contract. Contractor shall furnish satisfactory evidence that all obligations of this nature herein above designated have been paid, discharged or waived. If Contractor fails to do so, then the County reserves the right to pay unpaid bills of which County has written notice direct and withhold from Contractor’s unpaid compensation a sum of money reasonably sufficient to liquidate any and all such lawful claims.**

**37. REQUIREMENT OF AND PROOF OF INSURANCE**

The successful Bidder shall furnish evidence of insurance to the County Purchasing Agent and shall maintain such insurance as required hereunder or as may be required in the Special Provisions or resultant contract, if different. Contractor shall obtain and thereafter continuously maintain in full force and effect, commercial general liability insurance, including but not limited to bodily injury, property damage, and contractual liability, with combined single limits as listed below or as may be required by State or Federal law, whichever is greater.

- A. For damages arising out of bodily injury to or death of one person in any one accident :  
ONE HUNDRED THOUSAND AND NO/100 (\$100,000.00) DOLLARS.
- B. For damages arising out of bodily injury to or death of two or more persons in any one accident:  
THREE HUNDRED THOUSAND AND NO/100 (\$300,000.00) DOLLARS.
- C. For any injury to or destruction of property in any one accident :  
ONE HUNDRED THOUSAND AND NO/100 (\$100,000.00) DOLLARS.

**Insurance shall be placed with insurers having an A.M. Best’s rating of no less than A.** Such insurance must be issued by a casualty company authorized to do business in the State of Texas, and in standard form approved by the Board of Insurance Commissioners of the State of Texas, with coverage provisions insuring the public from loss or damage that may arise to any person or property by reason of services rendered by Contractor.

**Galveston County shall be listed as the additional insured on policy certificates and shall be provided with no less than thirty (30) calendar days prior notice of any changes to the policy during the contractual period.**

Certificates of Insurance, fully executed by a licensed representative of the insurance company written or countersigned by an authorized Texas state agency, shall be filed with the County Purchasing Agent within ten (10) business days of issuance of notification from the County Purchasing Agent to Bidder that the contract is being activated as written proof of such insurance and further provided that Bidder shall not commence work under this contract until it has obtained all insurance required herein, provided written proof as required herein, and received written notice to proceed issued from the County Purchasing Agent.

Proof of renewal/replacement coverage shall be provided prior to the expiration, termination, or cancellation date of any policy and Galveston County shall be named as an additional insured on any such renewal/replacement coverage

**GENERAL PROVISIONS – INVITATION TO BID  
HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT  
GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS**

and a certificate of insurance showing such shall be provided to the Purchasing Agent. Said insurance shall not be cancelled, permitted to expire, or changed without at least thirty (30) days prior written notice to the County.

Insurance required herein shall be maintained in full force and effect during the life of this contract and shall be issued on an occurrence basis. Contractor shall require that any and all subcontractors that are not protected under the Contractor's own insurance policies take and maintain insurance of the same nature and in the same amounts as required of Contractor and provide written proof of such insurance to Contractor. Proof of renewed/replacement coverage shall be provided prior to the expiration, termination, or cancellation date of any policy. Contractor shall not allow any subcontractor to commence work on the subcontract until such insurance required for the subcontractor has been obtained and approved.

**Workers' Compensation Insurance:** Successful Bidder shall carry in full force Workers' Compensation Insurance Policy(ies), if there is more than one employee, for all its' employees, including but not limited to full time, part time, and emergency employees employed by the successful Bidder. Current insurance certificates certifying that such policies as specified above are in full force and effect shall be furnished by successful Bidder to the County.

Insurance is to be placed with insurers having a Best rating of no less than A. The Bidder shall furnish the County with certificates of insurance and original endorsements affecting coverage required by these insurance clauses within ten (10) business days of receiving notification from the County Purchasing Agent that the contract is being activated. The certificates and endorsements for each insurance policy are to be signed by a person authorized by the insurer to bind coverage on its behalf. The Bidder shall be required to submit annual renewals for the term of this contract prior to expiration of any policy.

In addition to the remedies stated herein, the County has the right to pursue other remedies permitted by law or in equity.

The County agrees to provide Bidder with reasonable and timely notice of any claim, demand, or cause of action made or brought against the County arising out of or related to utilization of the property. Bidder shall have the right to defend any such claim, demand, or cause of action at its sole cost and expense and within its sole and exclusive discretion. The County agrees not to compromise or settle any claim or cause of action arising out of or related to the utilization of the property without the prior written consent of the Bidder.

In no event shall the County be liable for any damage to or destruction of any property belonging to the Bidder.

**Subrogation Waiver.** Bidder and Bidder's insurance carrier waive any and all rights to subrogation against Galveston County in regard to any suit or claim arising out of personal injury or property damage resulting from Bidder's performance under this agreement.

**38. BID GUARANTEE**

Unless specified differently within the Special Provisions of this procurement, each Bidder shall be required to submit a bid guarantee with its bid as required within this Section.

Evidencing its firm commitment to engage in contract if Bidder is selected for award of contract, each Bidder is required to furnish with their bid a cashier's check or an acceptable Bidder's bond in the amount of five percent (5%) of the total contract price. If Bidder is using a bond, then the Bidder bond must be executed with a surety company authorized to do business in the State of Texas. Failure to furnish the bid guarantee in the proper form and amount, by the time set for opening of bids may be cause for rejection of the bid.

The cashier's check or Bidder/bid bond (as applicable) will be returned to each respective unsuccessful Bidder(s) subsequent to the Commissioners Court award of contract, and shall be returned to the successful Bidder upon the

**GENERAL PROVISIONS – INVITATION TO BID  
HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT  
GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS**

completion and submission of all contract documents. Provided however, that the cashier's check or Bidder bond will be forfeited to the County as liquidated damages should successful Bidder fail to execute the contract within thirty (30) days after receiving notice of the acceptance of its bid.

**39. PERFORMANCE AND PAYMENT BONDS (if required)**

Successful Bidder, before beginning work, shall execute a performance bond and a payment bond, each of which must be in the amount of the contract. The required payment and performance bonds must each be executed by a corporate surety authorized to write surety bonds in the State of Texas and in accordance with Chapter 3503 of the Insurance Code (codified in 2005 and originally within Section 1, Chapter 87, Acts of the 56<sup>th</sup> Leg., R.S., 1959, and in Article 7.19-1, Vernon's Texas Insurance Code).

The performance and payment bonds must each clearly and prominently display on the bond or on an attachment to the bond:

- a.) The name, mailing address, physical address, and telephone number, including the area code, of the surety company to which any notice of claim should be sent; or
- b.) The toll-free telephone number maintained by the Texas Department of Insurance under Subchapter B, Chapter 521, Insurance Code, and a statement that the address of the surety company to which any notice of claim should be sent may be obtained from the Texas Department of Insurance by calling the toll free-telephone number.

The performance bond shall be solely for the protection of Galveston County, in the full amount of the contract, and conditioned on the faithful performance of the work in accordance with the plans, specifications, and contract documents. The payment bond is solely for the protection and use of payment bond beneficiaries who have a direct contractual relationship with the prime contractor or a subcontractor to supply labor or material, and in the amount of the contract.

The payment and performance bonds required to be furnished herein must be furnished before the contractor begins work and are a requirement for issuance of a Notice to Proceed. Such bonds must be furnished to the Galveston County Purchasing Agent within thirty (30) calendar days after the date of the full execution of the contract or, if applicable, as required under Chapter 2253, Government Code, whichever is earlier. Contractor's failure to provide the required payment and performance bonds within such time period shall constitute an event of default under this contract. Contractor shall not commence work until all applicable certificates of insurance, performance bonds, and payment bonds have been received and approved by the County Purchasing Agent and the Contractor receives notice to proceed in writing that has been issued by the County Purchasing Agent.

Additionally, if this request for bid is for the award of a public works contract, then compliance with Chapter 2253 of the Texas Government Code, which is known as the McGregor Act, is mandatory. Performance and payment bonds are required to be furnished in accordance with Chapter 2253 of the Texas Government Code. Bidder should familiarize itself with the entire provisions of Chapter 2253 of the Texas Government Code.

**40. PATENT AND COPYRIGHT PROTECTION**

The Bidder agrees at its sole expense to protect the County from claims involving infringement of patents, copyright, trademark, trade secret, or other intellectual property rights. **Bidder shall indemnify and save harmless the County of Galveston, its officers, employees, and agents, from liability of any nature and kind whatsoever, including without limitation cost and expenses, for or on account of any copyrighted, trademarked, trade secret, patented or un-patented invention, process, or article manufactured or used in the performance of the contract, or other intellectual property rights, including its use by the County.** Bidder also agrees that if Bidder is awarded this

**GENERAL PROVISIONS – INVITATION TO BID  
HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT  
GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS**

contract, that no work performed hereunder shall be subject to patent, copyright, or other intellectual property by Bidder.

**41. CONFLICT OF INTEREST DISCLOSURE REPORTING (FORM CIQ)**

Bidder may be required under Chapter 176 of the Texas Local Government Code to complete and file a conflict of interest questionnaire (CIQ Form). The CIQ Form pertains to business relationship, gift giving and family relationship reporting. If bidder is required to file a CIQ Form, then the completed CIQ Form must be filed with the County Clerk of Galveston County, Texas.

**Business relationship.** If Bidder has an employment or other business relationship with a local government officer of Galveston County or with a family member of a local government officer of Galveston County that results in the officer or family member of the officer receiving taxable income that exceeds \$2,500.00 during the preceding 12-month period, then Bidder **MUST** complete a CIQ Form and file the original of the CIQ Form with the County Clerk of Galveston County.

**Gift-giving.** If Bidder has given a local government officer of Galveston County or a family member of a local government officer of Galveston County one or more gifts with an aggregate value of more than one-hundred dollars (\$100.00) during the preceding 12-months, then Bidder **MUST** complete a CIQ Form and file the original of the CIQ Form with the County Clerk of Galveston County.

**Family member.** For purposes of the business relationship and gift giving reporting requirements, a “family member” means a person related to another person with the first degree of consanguinity or affinity, as described by Subchapter B, Chapter 573, Texas Government Code. Examples of persons within the first degree by consanguinity or affinity include a son, daughter, father, mother, spouse, son-in-law, daughter-in-law, father-in-law, mother-in-law, stepson, stepdaughter, stepmother, and stepfather.

**Family relationship.** If Bidder has a “family relationship” with a local government officer of Galveston County then Bidder **MUST** complete a CIQ Form and file the original of the CIQ Form with the County Clerk of Galveston County, regardless of whether Bidder has a business relationship or has given gifts to the local government officer or a family member of the local government officer. For this purpose, “family relationship” means Bidder is related within the third degree by consanguinity or the second degree by affinity, as those terms are defined under Chapter 573 of the Texas Government Code, to a local government officer of Galveston County. Examples of such relationships include a son, daughter, mother, father, brother, sister, grandchild, great-grandchild, grandparent, great-grandparent, niece, nephew, uncle, aunt, spouse, mother-in-law, father-in-law, daughter-in-law, son-in-law, spouse’s grandchild, spouse’s grandparent, grandparent’s spouse, grandchild’s spouse, stepson, stepdaughter, stepmother, and stepfather.

Bidder must file its original CIQ Form with the Galveston County Clerk. The Galveston County Clerk has offices at the following locations:

**Galveston County Clerk**  
Galveston County Justice Center, Suite 2001  
600 59<sup>th</sup> Street  
Galveston, Texas 77551

**Galveston County Clerk**  
North County Annex, 1<sup>st</sup> Floor  
174 Calder Road  
League City, Texas 77573

**GENERAL PROVISIONS – INVITATION TO BID  
HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT  
GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS**

Again, if Bidder is required to file a CIQ Form, the original completed form is filed with the Galveston County Clerk (**not the Purchasing Agent**).

For Bidder's convenience, a blank CIQ Form is enclosed with this bid package. Blank CIQ Form(s) may also be obtained by visiting the Purchasing Agent's website – this website is linked from the Galveston County homepage, at <http://www.galvestoncountytexas.gov>.

Chapter 176 specifies deadlines for the filing of CIQ Forms (both initial filings and updated filings).

It is Bidder's sole responsibility to file a true and complete CIQ Form with the Galveston County Clerk if Bidder is required to file by the requirements of Chapter 176 of the Local Government Code. Bidder is advised that it is an offense to fail to comply with the disclosure reporting requirements dictated under Chapter 176 of the Texas Local Government Code, and the failure to file may be grounds to void the contract, if Bidder is awarded a contract.

If bidder has any questions about compliance with Chapter 176, Bidder may wish to consult its' legal counsel. Compliance is the individual responsibility of each person, business, and agent who is subject to Chapter 176 of the Texas Local Government Code.

**42. DISCLOSURE OF INTERESTED PARTIES/FORM 1295**

Under Section 2252.908 of the Government Code, any business entity that enters into a contract with Galveston County that requires the approval of the Commissioners Court must submit a "Disclosure of Interested Parties" to the County prior to the execution of the contract. This form, the "Disclosure of Interested Parties" form was promulgated by the Texas Ethics Commission, and is the "Form 1295". **This procurement is subject to these requirements.**

The Texas Ethics Commission was charged with promulgating rules to implement Section 2252.908 of the Government Code. The rules adopted by the Texas Ethics Commission are located at Sections 46.1, 46.3, and 46.5 of Title 1 of the Texas Administrative Code. Thus, the law covering these requirements is located at Section 2252.908 of the Government Code, and in Title 1, Sections 46.1, 46.3, and 46.5 of the Texas Administrative Code.

The Texas Ethics Commission's website is: [www.ethics.state.tx.us](http://www.ethics.state.tx.us). The area of the Texas Ethics Commission website pertaining to Form 1295 is:

[www.ethics.state.tx.us/whatsnew/elf\\_info\\_form1295.htm](http://www.ethics.state.tx.us/whatsnew/elf_info_form1295.htm).

**Form 1295 must be completed electronically through the Texas Ethics Commission website** (handwritten forms are not allowable). Once the business entity has completed their electronic filing of Form 1295, then the business entity must print out the electronically completed form, and sign and notarize the Form 1295. Once Form 1295 is signed and notarized, the business entity must submit their completed, signed, and notarized Form 1295 to the Galveston County Purchasing Agent.

**Successful Proposer is and shall be subject to these requirements, and no resultant contract may be executed by the Commissioners Court until the completed, signed, and notarized Form 1295 is on file with the County Purchasing Agent.**

**No portion of the Form 1295 process commits the County to any type of award of contract whatsoever.**



**GENERAL PROVISIONS – INVITATION TO BID  
HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT  
GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS**

After the Purchasing Agent's Office receives the completed, signed, and notarized Form 1295, the Purchasing Agent's Office will, within 30 days, go the Texas Ethics Commission website to submit electronic confirmation of the County's receipt of the completed, signed, and notarized Form 1295.

**43. CERTIFICATION REGARDING DEBARMENT, SUSPENSION, PROPOSED DEBARMENT, AND OTHER RESPONSIBILITY MATTERS & REQUIREMENT TO REGISTER IN SAM**

Bidder certifies that neither it, nor any of its Principals, are presently debarred, suspended, proposed for debarment, disqualified, excluded, or in any way declared ineligible for the award of contracts by any Federal agency. Contractor agrees that it shall refund Galveston County for any payments made to Contractor while ineligible. Contractor acknowledges that Contractor's uncured failure to perform under this Agreement, if such should occur, may result in Contractor being debarred from performing additional work for the County, the respecting State Agency administering the grant funding the contract, if applicable, the State, FEMA or HUD (as applicable), and other Federal and State entities. Further, Bidder has executed the Certification Regarding Debarment, Suspension, Proposed Debarment, and Other Responsibility Matters and returned the fully completed and executed original certification with the submission of its bid. **The truthful and fully completed and executed original of the Certification Regarding Debarment, Suspension, Proposed Debarment, and Other Responsibility Matters must be included with the submission of Bidder's Bid and is a mandatory requirement of this Invitation to Bid. Bidder's failure to include the fully completed and executed original of this Certification shall be considered non-compliance with the requirements of this Invitation to Bid and grounds for the rejection of Bidder's Bid.** Proposer shall immediately notify the County Purchasing Agent if it becomes debarred or suspended, placed on the Consolidated List of Debarred Contractors, or in any other way becomes ineligible for award of contract by any Federal agency. This Certification is a material fact relied upon by Galveston County; if it is later determined that the contractor did not comply with 2 C.F.R. Part 180 and 2 C.F.R. Part 3000, in addition to the remedies available to Galveston County and the State agency administering this grant, the Federal Government may pursue available remedies, including but not limited to suspension and/or debarment of contractor.

If the contract to be awarded pursuant to this procurement involves the use of Federal funds, then bidder must also be registered in the Federal Contractor Registry through the System for Award Management (SAM) to be eligible for award of contract pursuant to this procurement.

Information regarding the SAM is available at:

<http://www.federalcontractorregistry.com/?gclid=CIG1hf2rr8wCFYkCaQoducANZw> or at  
<https://www.sam.gov/portal/SAM/#1>.

No contract involving the use of Federal funds may be awarded to any bidder unless and until such registration is current and in good standing under SAM. Successful bidder must maintain SAM registration throughout the entire term of the agreement with the County. If this contract involves the use of Federal funds, then bidder must enclose proof of such SAM registration within its response, which is also a mandatory requirement of this procurement; failure to enclose such proof shall be considered non-compliance with the requirements of this procurement and grounds for the rejection of bidder's response to this procurement (i.e., bid, proposal, or qualifications statement, as applicable).

**GENERAL PROVISIONS – INVITATION TO BID  
HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT  
GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS**

**44. SOVEREIGN IMMUNITY**

The County specifically reserves any claim it may have to sovereign, qualified, or official immunity as a defense to any action arising in conjunction with this contract.

**45. CONTROLLING LAW AND VENUE**

Bidder acknowledges and agrees that the contract is and shall be governed and construed by the laws of the State of Texas and that venue shall lie exclusively in a court of competent jurisdiction in Galveston County, Texas.

**46. MERGERS, ACQUISITIONS**

The Bidder shall be required to notify the County of any potential for merger or acquisition of which there is knowledge at the time that a bid is submitted.

If subsequent to the award of any contract resulting from this Invitation to Bid the Bidder shall merge or be acquired by another firm, the following documents must be submitted to the County:

- A. Corporate resolutions prepared by the awarded Bidder and the new entity ratifying acceptance of the original contract, terms, conditions and prices;
- B. New entity's Federal Identification Number (FEIN);
- C. New entity's proposed operating plans;
- D. New entity's proof of registration in SAM for contracts involving Federal funds;
- E. New entity's certification regarding debarment;
- F. New entity's certification regarding lobbying; and
- G. W-9 Form for new entity.

Moreover, Bidder is required to provide the County with notice of any anticipated merger or acquisition as soon as Bidder has actual knowledge of the anticipated merger or acquisition. The New Bidder's proposed plan of operation must be submitted prior to merger to allow time for submission of such plan to the Commissioners Court for its approval.

**47. DELAYS**

The County reserves the right to delay the scheduled commencement date of the contract if it is to the advantage of the County. There shall be no additional costs attributed to these delays should any occur. Bidder agrees it will make no claims for damages, for damages for lost revenues, for damages caused by breach of contract with third parties, or any other claim by Bidder attributed to these delays, should any occur. In addition, Bidder agrees that any contract it enters into with any third party in anticipation of the commencement of the contract will contain a statement that the third party will similarly make no claim for damages based on delay of the scheduled commencement date of the contract.

**48. ACCURACY OF DATA**

Information and data provided through this Invitation to Bid are believed to be reasonably accurate.

**GENERAL PROVISIONS – INVITATION TO BID  
HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT  
GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS**

**49. SUBCONTRACTING/ASSIGNMENT**

Bidder shall not assign, sell, or otherwise transfer its contract in whole or in part without prior written permission of the County acting by and through its Commissioners' Court. Such consent, if granted, shall not relieve the Bidder of any of its responsibilities under this contract.

**50. INDEPENDENT CONTRACTOR**

Bidder expressly acknowledges that it is an independent contractor. Nothing in this agreement is intended nor shall be construed to create an agency relationship, an employer/employee relationship, a joint venture relationship, or any other relationship allowing County to exercise control or direction over the manner or method by which Bidder or its subcontractors perform in providing the requirements stated in the Invitation to Bid.

**51. MONITORING PERFORMANCE**

The County shall have the unfettered right to monitor and audit the Bidder's work in every respect. In this regard, the Bidder shall provide its full cooperation and insure the cooperation of its employees, agents, assigns, and subcontractors. Further, the Bidder shall make available for inspection and/or copying when requested, original data, records, and accounts relating to the Bidder's work and performance under this contract. In the event any such material is not held by the Bidder in its original form, a true copy shall be provided.

**52. SUBJECT TO APPROPRIATION OF FUNDS**

State law prohibits the obligation and expenditure of public funds beyond the fiscal year for which a budget has been approved by the Commissioners' Court. Galveston County anticipates this to be an integral part of future budgets to be approved during the periods of this contract, except for unanticipated needs or events which may prevent such payments against this contract. However, Galveston County cannot guarantee the availability of funds, and enters into this contract only to the extent such funds are made available through appropriation (allocation) by the Commissioners' Court. This contract shall not be construed as creating any debt on behalf of the County of Galveston in violation of TEX. CONST. art. XI, § 7, and it is understood that all obligations of Galveston County are subject to the availability of funds.

**53. CONTRACTS SUBJECT TO GRANT FUNDING**

Notwithstanding the foregoing, if the contract to be awarded by this procurement is funded with Federal or State grant funds, the bidder acknowledges that the obligations of the County under the contract are contingent upon the continued availability of grant funding to meet the County's obligations. If the grant(s) to the County is reduced, de-obligated, or otherwise discontinued or terminated, Contractor agrees that the County may immediately terminate the contract without penalty or any liability whatsoever on the part of the County, the State, or the Federal awarding agency.

**54. PROCUREMENT ETHICS**

Galveston County is committed to the highest ethical standards. Therefore, it is a serious breach of the public trust to subvert the public purchasing process by directing purchases to certain favored vendors, or to tamper with the competitive bidding process, whether it's done for kickbacks, friendship or any other reason. Since misuse of the

**GENERAL PROVISIONS – INVITATION TO BID  
HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT  
GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS**

purchasing power of a local government carries criminal penalties, and many such misuses are from a lack of clear guidelines about what constitutes an abuse of office, the Code of Ethics outlined below must be strictly followed.

Galveston County also requires ethical conduct from those who do business with the County.

**CODE OF ETHICS – Statement of Purchasing Policy:**

Public employment is a public trust. It is the policy of Galveston County to promote and balance the objective of protecting the County's integrity and the objective of facilitating the recruitment and retention of personnel needed by Galveston County. Such policy is implemented by prescribing essential standards of ethical conduct without creating unnecessary obstacles to entering public office.

Public employees must discharge their duties impartially so as to assure fair competitive access to governmental procurement by responsible contractors. Moreover, they should conduct themselves in such a manner as to foster public confidence in the integrity of the Galveston County procurement organization.

To achieve the purpose of this Article, it is essential that those doing business with Galveston County also observe the ethical standards prescribed herein.

**General Ethical Standards:**

It shall be a breach of ethics to attempt to realize personal gain through public employment with Galveston County by any conduct inconsistent with the proper discharge of the employee's duties.

It shall be a breach of ethics to attempt to influence any public employee of Galveston County to breach the standards of ethical conduct set forth in this code.

It shall be a breach of ethics for any employee of Galveston County to participate directly or indirectly in a procurement when the employee knows that:

- The employee or any member of the employee's family, has a financial interest pertaining to the procurement;
- A business or organization in which the employee or any member of the employee's family, has a financial interest pertaining to the procurement; or
- Any other person, business, or organization with which the employee or any member of the employee's family is negotiating or has an arrangement concerning prospective employment is involved in the procurement.

**Gratuities:**

It shall be a breach of ethics for any person to offer, give, or agree to give any employee or former employee of Galveston County, or for any employee or former employee of Galveston County to solicit, demand, accept or agree to accept from another person, a gratuity or an offer of employment in connection with any decision, approval, disapproval, recommendation, preparation of any part of a program requirement or a purchase request, influencing the content of any specification or procurement standard, rendering of advice, investigation, auditing, or in any other advisory capacity in any proceeding or application, request for ruling, determination, claim or controversy, or other particular matter, pertaining to any program requirement or a contract or subcontract, or to any solicitation or bid pending before this government.

**Kickbacks:**

**GENERAL PROVISIONS – INVITATION TO BID  
HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT  
GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS**

It shall be a breach of ethics for any payment, gratuity or offer of employment to be made by or on behalf of a subcontractor under a contract to the prime contractor or higher tier subcontractor for any contract for Galveston County, or to any person associated therewith, as an inducement for the award of a contract, subcontract or order.

**Contract Clause:**

The prohibition against gratuities and kickbacks prescribed above shall be conspicuously set forth in every contract and solicitation by Galveston County.

**Confidential Information:**

It shall be a breach of ethics for any employee or former employee of Galveston County to knowingly use confidential information for actual or anticipated personal gain, or for the actual or anticipated gain of any other person.

**Prohibition against Contingent Fees:**

It shall be a breach of ethical standards for a person to be retained, or to retain a person, to solicit or secure a Galveston County contract upon an agreement or understanding for a commission, percentage, brokerage, or contingent fee, except for retention of bona fide employees or bona fide established commercial selling agencies for the purpose of securing business. Failure to abide by this section constitutes a breach of ethical standards.

**Representation:**

Bidder represents and warrants, by signing and submitting its bid, that it has not retained anyone in violation of this section prohibiting contingent fees.

**Contract Clause:**

The representation prescribed above shall be conspicuously set forth in every contract and solicitation thereof.

**55. NON-COLLUSION AFFIDAVIT**

Bidder certifies, by signing and submitting a bid, that the bid is not made in the interest of, or on behalf of, any undisclosed person, partnership, company, association, organization, or corporation; that the bid is genuine and not collusive or sham; that the contractor has not directly or indirectly induced or solicited another contractor to put in a false or sham bid, and has not directly or indirectly colluded, conspired, connived, or agreed with any contractor or anyone else to put in a sham bid or that anyone shall refrain from bidding; that the contractor has not in any manner, directly or indirectly, sought by agreement, communications, or conference with anyone to fix the bid price of the contractor of any other bidder, or to fix any overhead, profit or cost element of the bid price, or that of any other contractor, or to secure any advantage against the public body awarding the contract or anyone interested in the proposed contract; that all statements contained in the bid are true; and further, that the contractor has not, directly or indirectly, submitted his or her bid price or any breakdown thereof, or the contents thereof, or divulged information or data relative thereto, or paid, and will not pay, any fee to any cooperation, partnership, company association, organization, bid depository, or to any member or agent thereof to effectuate a collusive or sham bid.

**A blank Non-Collusion Affidavit is included with this Bid packet. Bidder must enclose a truthful and fully executed original Non-Collusion Affidavit with the submission of its bid. This is a mandatory requirement of this Invitation to Bid. Failure to include the truthfully and fully executed Non-Collusion Affidavit in the submission of its Bid shall be considered non-compliance with the requirements of this Invitation to Bid by the Bidder and grounds for the rejection of Bidder's submission.**

No negotiations, decisions, or actions shall be initiated by any company as a result of any verbal discussion with any County employee prior to the opening of responses to this Invitation to Bid.

No officer or employee of the County of Galveston, and no other public or elected official, or employee, who may exercise any function or responsibilities in the review or approval of this undertaking shall have any personal or

**GENERAL PROVISIONS – INVITATION TO BID  
HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT  
GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS**

financial interest, direct or indirect, in any contract or negotiation process thereof. The above compliance request will be part of all County of Galveston contracts for this service.

**56. CERTIFICATION REGARDING LOBBYING**

Bidder certifies that:

- a. No Federal appropriated funds have been paid or will be paid, by or on behalf of the bidder, to any person for influencing or attempting to influence a department or employee of an agency, a member of Congress, or an employee of a member of Congress in connection with the awarding of any Federal contract, the making of any Federal grant, the making of any Federal loan, the entering into of any cooperative agreement, and the extension, continuation, renewal, amendment, or modification of any Federal contract, grant, loan or cooperative agreement.
- b. If any funds other than federal appropriated funds have been paid or will be paid to any person for influencing or attempting to influence a department or employee of any agency, a member of Congress, a department or employee of congress, or an employee of a member of Congress in connection with this federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement, the bidder shall complete and submit Standard Form LLL, “Disclosure Form to Report Lobbying”, in accordance with its instructions.
- c. Bidder shall require that the language of this certification be included in the award documents for all subawards at all tiers (including subcontracts, subgrants, and contracts under grants, loans, and cooperative agreements) and that all subrecipients shall certify and disclose accordingly.

The truthful and fully completed and executed original of the Certification Regarding Lobbying (included with bid packet) must be included with the submission of Bidder’s Bid and is a mandatory requirement of this Invitation to Bid. Bidder’s failure to include the fully completed and executed or original of this Certification shall be considered non-compliant with the requirements of this Invitation to Bid and grounds for the rejection of the Bidder’s Bid. Submission of the certification is a prerequisite for making or entering into a contract with Bidder and is imposed by Section 1352, Title 31, United States Code. Further, any person who fails to file the required certification shall be subject to a civil penalty of not less than \$10,000 and not more than \$100,000 for each such failure.

**57. NON-DISCRIMINATION**

- a. **Equal Employment Opportunity:** Bidder will not discriminate against any employee or applicant for employment because of race, color, religion, national origin, sex, disability, genetic information or veteran status. Bidder will take affirmative action to ensure that applicants are employed, and that employees are treated during employment, without regard to their race, color, religion, national origin, sex, disability, genetic information or veteran status. Such action shall include, but not be limited to, the following: employment; upgrading; demotion or transfer; recruitment or recruitment advertising; layoff or termination; rates of pay or other forms of compensation; and selection for training, including apprenticeship. Bidder agrees to post in conspicuous places, available to employees and applicants for employment, notices of employment.

Bidder will, in all solicitation or advertisements for employees placed by or on behalf of Bidder, state that all qualified applicants will receive consideration for employment without regard to race, color, religion, national origin, sex, disability, genetic information, or veteran status.

**GENERAL PROVISIONS – INVITATION TO BID  
HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT  
GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS**

Bidder will cause the foregoing provisions to be inserted in all subcontracts for any work covered by this Agreement so that such provisions will be binding upon each subcontractor, provided that the foregoing provisions shall not apply to contracts or subcontracts for standard commercial supplies or raw materials.

Bidder will include the provisions herein in every subcontract or purchase order unless exempted.

- b. Drug Free Work Place Act: Bidder shall comply with all applicable requirements of the Drug-Free Workplace Act of 1988 (Public Law 100-690, Title V, Subtitle D; 41 U.S.C. § 8102, et seq.) and implementing regulations thereunder.
- c. Americans with Disabilities Act: Bidder shall comply with all applicable provisions of the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 (Public Law 101-136) and implementing regulations thereunder.
- d. OSHA Regulations: Bidder agrees to maintain and to display any applicable materials for its employees in accordance with OSHA regulations.
- e. Compliance with Immigration Laws and Use of E-Verify: Bidder agrees to comply with all requirements of the U.S. Immigration Reform and Control Act of 1986, as amended, and any implementing regulations thereto. Bidder further agrees to utilize the E-Verify system through the Department of Homeland Security on its employees. Bidder shall not employ unauthorized aliens, and shall not assign services to be performed to any supplier or subcontractor who are unauthorized aliens. If any personnel performing any services hereunder are discovered to be an unauthorized alien, then Bidder will immediately remove such personnel from performing services hereunder and shall replace such personnel with personnel who are not unauthorized alien(s).
- f. State and Federal Law Compliance: Bidder agrees to comply with all other State and Federal laws and regulations applicable to the provision of services under this contract.

**58. RECORD RETENTION AND RIGHT TO AUDIT**

Bidder shall keep and maintain all records associated with this contract for a minimum of five (5) years from the close of the contract or as required by Federal or State law or regulation, whichever period is longer. If awarded this contract, Bidder shall allow the County reasonable access to the records in Bidder's possession, custody, or control that the County deems necessary to assist it in auditing the services, costs, and payments provided hereunder. If this contract involves the use of Federal or State funds, then Bidder shall also allow reasonable access to representatives of the Office of Inspector General, the General Accounting Office, the State Auditor's Office, and the other Federal and/or State agencies overseeing the funds that such entities deem necessary to facilitate review by such agencies and Bidder shall maintain fiscal records and supporting documentation for all expenditures in a manner that conforms with OMB Circular A-87 (relocated to 2 C.F.R. Part 225) and this contract.

**59. TITLE VI ASSURANCES/TxDOT**

The County is subject to Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964 and the Federal and State laws and regulations of the United States Department of Transportation and Texas Department of Transportation (TxDOT). Pursuant to these requirements, the County must have its contractors provide required assurances on compliance with non-discrimination by itself and its subcontractors. The Title VI Assurances within this Subsection are not exhaustive – whenever any Federal, State, or Local requirement requires additional clauses, this list shall not be construed as limiting. Contractor agrees as follows:

**GENERAL PROVISIONS – INVITATION TO BID  
HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT  
GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS**

- (1) **Compliance with Regulations:** The Contractor shall comply with the Regulations relative to nondiscrimination in Federally-assisted programs of the Department of Transportation (hereinafter, DOT) Title 49, Code of Federal Regulations, Part 21, as they may be amended from time to time (hereinafter referred to as the Regulations), which are incorporated herein by reference and made a part of this contract.
- (2) **Non-discrimination:** The Contractor, with regard to the work performed by it during the contract, shall not discriminate on the basis of race, color, national origin, religion, sex, age, disability or Veteran status in the selection and retention of subcontractors, including procurements of materials and leases of equipment. The Contractor shall not participate either directly or indirectly in the discrimination prohibited by Section 21.5 of the Regulations, including employment practices when the contract covers a program set forth in Appendix B of the Regulations.
- (3) **Solicitations for Subcontractors, Including Procurement of Materials and Equipment:** In all solicitations either by competitive bidding or negotiation made by the Contractor for work to be performed under a subcontract, including procurement of materials or leases of equipment, each potential subcontractor or supplier shall be notified by the Contractor of the Contractor's obligations under this contract and the Regulations relative to nondiscrimination on the grounds of race, color, national origin, religion, sex, age, disability or Veteran status.
- (4) **Information and Reports:** The Contractor shall provide all information and reports required by the Regulations or directives issued pursuant thereto, and shall permit access to its books, records, accounts, other sources of information and its facilities as may be determined by the Galveston County or the Texas Department of Transportation to be pertinent to ascertain compliance with such Regulations, orders and instructions. Where any information required of the Contractor is in the exclusive possession of another who fails or refuses to furnish this information the Contractor shall so certify to Galveston County or the Texas Department of Transportation as appropriate, and shall set forth what efforts it has made to obtain the information.
- (5) **Sanctions for Non-compliance:** In the event of the Contractor's noncompliance with the nondiscrimination provisions of this contract, Galveston County shall impose such contract sanctions as it or the Texas Department of Transportation may determine to be appropriate, including, but not limited to:
  - (a) withholding of payments to the Contractor under the contract until the Contractor complies, and/or;
  - (b) cancellation, termination, or suspension of the contract, in whole or in part.
- (6) **Incorporation of Provisions.** The Contractor shall include the provisions of paragraphs (1) through (6) in every subcontract, including procurement of materials and leases of equipment, unless exempt by the Regulations, or directives issued pursuant thereto. The Contractor shall take such action with respect to any subcontract or procurement as Galveston County or the Texas Department of Transportation may direct as a means of enforcing such provisions including sanctions for non-compliance: Provided, however, that, in the event Contractor becomes involved in, or is threatened with, litigation with a subcontractor or supplier as a result of such direction, the Contractor may request Galveston County to enter into such litigation to protect the interests of Galveston County, and, in addition, the Contractor may request the United States to enter into such litigation to protect the interests of the United States.

**60. SECTION 231.006, FAMILY CODE/DELINQUENT CHILD SUPPORT**

Pursuant to Title 5, Section 231.006 of the Texas Family Code, as applicable, Bidder certifies that it, including all of its principals, is/are current in child support payments and that it is eligible to receive payments from State funds under a contract for property, materials, or services. Bidder acknowledges and agrees that if it is awarded this contract, then the ensuing agreement may be terminated and payment withheld if this certification is inaccurate.



**GENERAL PROVISIONS – INVITATION TO BID  
HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT  
GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS**

Finally, by the submission of its bid, the Bidder certifies that it has included the names and social security numbers of each person with at least 25% ownership interest in Bidder within its response to the Invitation to Bid and that all such persons are current in child support payments.

**61. ANTITRUST**

Pursuant to 15 U.S.C. § 1, et seq., and Texas Business and Commerce Code, Chapter 15, Contractor, by the submission of its bid, certifies that neither Contractor nor any natural person, proprietorship, firm, corporation, partnership, association, or institution represented by Contractor or anyone acting for such natural person, proprietorship, firm, corporation, partnership, association, or institution has violated any Federal or State antitrust laws or communicated the nature of the offer, directly or indirectly, to any competitor or other person engaged in a similar line of business.

**62. LABOR STANDARDS**

On contracts funded under a federal grant: Bidder acknowledges that the contract to be awarded pursuant to this solicitation is on a grant program funded with Federal funds. Bidder shall comply with the requirements of 29 CFR Part 5 and Part 30 and shall be in conformity with Executive Order 11246, entitled “Equal Employment Opportunity”, Copeland, “Anti-Kickback” Act (40 U.S.C. 3145, 29 C.F.R. Part 3), the Davis-Bacon and Related Acts (40 U.S.C. 3141-3148, 29 C.F.R. Parts 1,3, and 5), the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act (40 U.S.C. 3701 et seq.), and all other applicable Federal, State, and local laws and regulations pertaining to labor standards, insofar as those acts apply to the performance of this Agreement. Bidder is also responsible for ensuring that all subcontractors comply with the requirements of 29 CFR Part 5 and Part 30 and shall be in conformity with Executive Order 11246, entitled “Equal Employment Opportunity”, Copeland “Anti-Kickback” Act, the Davis-Bacon and Related Acts (29 CFR Parts 1, 3 and 5), the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act (40 U.S.C. 3701 et seq.), and all other applicable Federal, State, and local laws and regulations pertaining to labor standards, insofar as those acts apply to the performance of this Agreement.

**63. PROCUREMENT LAWS**

- a. Bidder shall comply with all applicable local, State, and Federal procurement laws, rules, and regulations.
- b. If this contract is made pursuant to a federal award, then Contractor acknowledges that the contract is subject, without limitation, to applicable provisions within 2 C.F.R. Part 200, Uniform Administrative Requirements, Cost Principles, and Audit Requirements for Federal Awards. Contractor shall comply with applicable provisions within 2 C.F.R., Sections 200.319 through 200.326, including but not limited to the following:
  - 1.) **Equal Employment Opportunity**, 41 C.F.R. Part 60-1.4(b) (applicable to federally assisted construction contracts).
    - (a) During the performance of this contract, the contractor agrees as follows:
      - (1) The contractor will not discriminate against any employee or applicant for employment because of race, color, religion, sex, national original, disability, or veteran status. The contractor will take affirmative action to ensure that applicants are employed, and that employees are treated during employment, without regard to their race, color, religion, sex, national original, disability or veteran status. Such action shall include, but not be limited to the following: employment, upgrading, demotion, or transfer; recruitment or recruitment advertising; layoff or termination; rates of pay or other forms of compensation; and selection for training, including apprenticeship. The contractor agrees to post in conspicuous places, available to employees and

**GENERAL PROVISIONS – INVITATION TO BID  
HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT  
GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS**

applicants for employment, notices to be provided setting forth the provisions of this nondiscrimination clause.

- (2) The contractor will, in all solicitations or advertisements for employees placed by or on behalf of contractor, state that all qualified applicants will receive consideration for employment without regard to race, color, religion, sex, national origin, disability, or veteran status.
  - (3) The contractor will send to each labor union or representative of workers with which he has a collective bargaining agreement or other contract or understanding, a notice to be provided advising the said labor union or workers' representatives of the contractor's commitments under this section, and shall post copies of the notice in conspicuous places available to employees and applicants for employment.
  - (4) The contractor will comply with all provisions of Executive Order 11246 of September 24, 1965, and by rules, regulations, and relevant orders of the Secretary of Labor.
  - (5) The contractor will furnish all information and reports required by Executive Order 11246 of September 24, 1965, and by rules, regulations, and orders of the Secretary of Labor, or pursuant thereto, and will permit access to contractor's books, records, and accounts by the administering agency and the Secretary of Labor for purposes of investigation to ascertain compliance with such rules, regulations, and orders.
  - (6) In the event of the contractor's noncompliance with the nondiscrimination clauses of this contract or with any of the said rules, regulations, or orders, this contract may be cancelled, terminated, or suspended in whole or in part and the contractor may be declared ineligible for further Government contracts or federally assisted construction contracts in accordance with procedures authorized in Executive Order 11246 of September 24, 1965, and such other sanctions as may be imposed and remedies invoked as provided in Executive Order 11246 of September 24, 1965, or by rule, regulation, or order of the Secretary of Labor, or as otherwise provided by law.
  - (7) The contractor will include the portion of the sentence immediately preceding paragraph (1) and the provisions of paragraphs (1) through (7) in every subcontract or purchase order unless exempted by rules, regulations, or orders of the Secretary of Labor issued pursuant to section 204 of Executive Order 11246 of September 24, 1965, so that such provisions will be binding upon each subcontractor or vendor. The contractor will take such action with respect to any subcontract or purchase order as the administering agency may direct as a means of enforcing such provisions, including sanctions for noncompliance: Provided, however, that in the event a contractor becomes involved in, or is threatened with, litigation with a subcontractor or vendor as a result of such direction by the administering agency, the contractor may request the United States to enter into such litigation to protect the interests of the United States.
- 2.) **Small and minority business, women's business enterprises, and labor surplus area firms (2 C.F.R. § 200.321).** The County is required to take affirmative steps to assure that minority businesses, women's business enterprises, and labor surplus area firms are used when possible. This includes requiring the prime contractor, if subcontracts are to be let in the performance of this contract, to itself take affirmative steps in letting the subcontract. Accordingly, if subcontracts are to be let in the performance of this contract, the contractor must take affirmative steps in the letting of the subcontract(s), which must include:
- (a) placing qualified small and minority businesses and women's business enterprises on solicitation lists;
  - (b) assuring that small and minority businesses, and women's business enterprises are solicited whenever they are potential sources;
  - (c) dividing total requirements, when economically feasible, into smaller tasks or quantities to permit maximum participation by small and minority businesses, and women's business enterprises; and

**GENERAL PROVISIONS – INVITATION TO BID  
HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT  
GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS**

- (d) using the services and assistance, as appropriate, of such organizations as the Small Business Administration and the Minority Business Development Agency of the Department of Commerce.

In accordance with FEMA procurement guidance:

A small business is a business that is independently owned and operated, not dominant in the field of operation in which it is bidding on Galveston County contracts, and qualified as a small business under the Small Business Administration criteria and size standards at 13 C.F.R. Part 121.

A women's business enterprise is a business enterprise that is: (a) at least 51 percent owned by one or more women or, in the case of a publicly owned business, at least 51 percent of the stock is owned by one or more women; and (b) whose management and daily operations are controlled by one or more women.

A minority business is a business that is (a) at least 51 percent owned by one or more minority group members or, in the case of a publicly owned business, at least 51 percent of the stock is owned by one or more minority group members; and (b) whose management and daily operations are controlled by one or more minority group members.

- 3.) **Davis-Bacon Act as amended (40 U.S.C. 3141-3148).** When required by Federal program legislation, all prime construction contracts in excess of \$2,000 must include a provision for compliance with the Davis-Bacon Act as supplemented by the Department of Labor regulations (29 C.F.R. Part 5, "Labor Standards Provisions Applicable to Contracts Covering Federally Financed and Assisted Construction"). In accordance with the statute, contractor must be required to pay wages to laborers and mechanics at a rate not less than the prevailing wages specified in a wage determination made by the Secretary of Labor. In addition, contractors must be required to pay wages not less than once a week. The non-Federal entity (the County) must place a copy of the current prevailing wage determination issued by the Department of Labor in each solicitation. The decision to award a contract or subcontract must be condition upon the acceptance of the wage determination. The non-Federal entity must report all suspected or reported violations to the Federal awarding agency. The contract must also include a provision for compliance with the Copeland Anti-Kickback Act (40 U.S.C. § 3145) as supplemented by the Department of Labor regulations (29 C.F.R. Part 3, "Contractors and Subcontractors on Public Building or Public Work Financed in Whole or in Part by Loans or Grants from the United States").
- 4.) **Compliance with the Copeland "Anti-Kickback" Act.** Contractor is prohibited from inducing, by any means, any person employed in the construction, completion, or repair of public work, to give up any part of the compensation to which the person is otherwise entitled. The non-Federal entity must report all suspected or reported violations to the Federal awarding agency. "Whoever, by force, intimidation, or threat of procuring dismissal from employment, or by any other manner whatsoever induces any person employed in the construction, prosecution, completion or repair of any public building, public work, or building or work financed in whole or in part by loans or grants from the United States, to give up any part of the compensation to which he is entitled under his contract of employment, shall be fined under this title [Title 18, U.S.C.] or imprisoned not more than five years, or both." 18 U.S.C. § 874.
- (a) Contractor shall comply with 18 U.S.C. § 874, 40 U.S.C. § 3145, and the requirements of 29 C.F.R. Part 3 as may be applicable, which are incorporated by reference into this contract.
- (b) The contractor or subcontractor shall insert in any subcontracts the clause above and such other clauses as the Federal awarding agency may be appropriate instructions require, and also a clause requiring the subcontractors to include these clauses in any lower tier subcontracts. The prime contractor shall be responsible for the compliance by any subcontractor or lower tier subcontractor with all of these contract clauses.

**GENERAL PROVISIONS – INVITATION TO BID  
HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT  
GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS**

- (c) Breach. A breach of the contract clause above may be grounds for termination of the contract, and for debarment as a contractor and subcontractor as provided in 29 C.F.R. § 5.12.

**5.) Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act.**

- (a) Where applicable, all contracts awarded by the County in excess of \$100,000 that involve the employment of mechanics or laborers must include a provision for compliance with 40 U.S.C. §§ 3702 and 3704, as supplemented by the Department of Labor regulations at 29 C.F.R. Part 5. Under 40 U.S.C. 3702 of the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act, each contractor must be required to compute the wages of every mechanic and laborer on the basis of a standard work week of 40 hours. Work in excess of the standard work week is permissible provided that the worker is compensated at a rate of not less than one and a half times the basic rate of pay for all hours worked in excess of 40 hours in the work week. The requirements of 40 U.S.S. 3704 are applicable to construction work and provide that no laborer or mechanic must be required to work in surroundings or under working conditions which are unsanitary, hazardous or dangerous. These requirements do not apply to the purchase of supplies or material or articles ordinarily available on the open market, or contractors for transportation or transmission of intelligence.
- (b) Compliance with the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act.
- (1) Overtime requirements. No contractor or subcontractor contracting for any part of the contract work which may require or involve the employment of laborers or mechanics shall require or permit any such laborer or mechanic in any workweek in which he or she is employed on such work to work in excess of forty hours in such workweek unless such laborer or mechanic receives compensation at a rate not less than one and one-half times the basic rate of pay for all hours worked in excess of forty hours in such workweek.
- (2) Violation; liability for unpaid wages; liquidated damages. In the event of any violation of the clause set forth in paragraph (1) of this subsection the contractor and any subcontractor responsible therefor shall be liable for the unpaid wages. In addition, such contractor and subcontractor shall be liable to the United States (in the case of work done under contract for the District of Columbia or a territory, to such District or to such territory), for liquidated damages. Such liquidated damages shall be computed with respect to each individual laborer or mechanic, including watchmen and guards, employed in violation of the clause set forth in paragraph (1) of this subsection, in the sum of \$10 for each calendar day on which such individual was required or permitted to work in excess of the standard work week of forty hours without payment of the overtime wages required by the clause set forth in paragraph (1) of this subsection.
- (3) Withholding for unpaid wages and liquidated damages. The awarding Federal agency, State agency, or the County shall upon its own action or upon written request of an authorized representative of the Department of Labor withhold or cause to be withheld, from any moneys payable on account of work performed by the contractor or subcontractor under any such contract or any other Federal contract with the same prime contractor, or any other federally-assisted contract subject to the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act, which is held by the same prime contractor, such sums as may be determined to be necessary to satisfy any liabilities of such contractor or subcontractor for unpaid wages and liquidated damages as provided in the clause set forth in paragraph (2) of this subsection.
- (4) Subcontracts. The contractor or subcontractor shall insert in any subcontracts the clauses set forth in paragraph (1) through (4) of this subsection and also a clause requiring the subcontractors to include these clauses in any lower tier subcontracts. The prime contractor shall be responsible for compliance by any subcontractor or lower tier subcontractor with the clauses set forth in paragraphs (1) through (4) of this subsection.

**GENERAL PROVISIONS – INVITATION TO BID  
HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT  
GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS**

**6.) Rights to Inventions Made Under a Contractor Agreement.**

- (a) If the Federal award meets the definition of “funding agreement” under 37 C.F.R. § 401.2(a) and the recipient or subrecipient wishes to enter into a contract with a small business firm or nonprofit organization regarding the substitution of parties, assignment or performance of experimental, developmental, or research work under the “funding agreement,” the recipient or subrecipient must comply with the requirements of 37 C.F.R. Part 401, “Rights to Inventions Made by Nonprofit Organizations and Small Business Firms Under Government Grants, Contracts and Cooperative Agreements,” and any implementing regulations issued by the awarding agency.
- (b) Stafford Act Disaster Grants. This requirement does not apply to Public Assistance, Hazard Mitigation Grant Program, Crisis Counseling Assistance and Training Grant program, Disaster Case Management Grant Program, and Federal Assistance to Individuals and Households – Other Needs Assistance Grant Program, as FEMA awards under these programs do not meet the definition of “funding agreement.”
- (c) The regulations and 37 C.F.R. § 401.2(a) currently defines “funding agreement” as any contract, grant, or cooperative agreement entered into between any Federal agency, other than the Tennessee Valley Authority, and any contractor for the performance of experimental, developmental, or research work funded in whole or in part by the Federal government. This term also includes any assignment, substitution of parties, or subcontract of any type entered into for the performance of experimental, developmental, or research work under a funding agreement as defined in the first sentence of this paragraph.

**7.) Clean Air Act (42 U.S.C. §§ 7401 – 7671q) and the Federal Water Pollution Control Act 33 U.S.C. §§ 1251-1387), as amended.**

- (a) The contractor agrees to comply with all applicable standards, orders or regulations issued pursuant to the Clean Air Act, as amended, 42 U.S.C. § 7401, et seq., and agrees to comply with all applicable standards, orders, or regulations issued pursuant to the Federal Water Pollution Contract Act, as amended, 33 U.S. C. § 1251, et seq.
- (b) The contractor agrees to report each violation of the Clean Air Act and/or the Federal Water Pollution Control Act to the Federal awarding agency, the State agency administering the grant, and the Regional Office of the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) and understands and agrees that the Federal awarding agency, the State agency, and the EPA will, in turn, report each violation as required to assure notification to Galveston County, the Federal Emergency Management Agency, and the appropriate EPA Regional Office.

**8.) Debarment and Suspension (Executive Orders 12549 and 12689).** A contract award must not be made to parties listed on the government-wide exclusions in the System for Award Management (SAM), in accordance with the OMB guidelines at 2 C.F.R. Part 180 that implement Executive Orders 12549 and 12689. The Contractor is required to verify that none of the contractor, its principals (defined at 2 C.F.R. § 180.995), or its affiliates (defined at 2 C.F.R. § 180.905) are excluded (defined at 2 C.F.R. § 180.940) or disqualified (defined at 2 C.F.R. § 180.935).

Contractor must comply with 2 C.F.R. Part 180, Subpart C and 2 C.F.R. Part 3000, Subpart C, and must include a requirement to comply with these regulations in any lower tier covered transaction it enters into. Bidder agrees to comply with the requirements of 2 C.F.R. Part 180, Subpart C, and 2 C.F.R. Part 3000, Subpart C, while this offer is valid and through the period of any contract that may arise from this offer. The bidder further agrees to include a provision requiring such compliance in its lower tier covered transactions.

**9.) Procurement of Recovered Materials.**

**GENERAL PROVISIONS – INVITATION TO BID  
HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT  
GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS**

- (a.) A non-Federal entity that is a State agency or agency of a political subdivision of the State and its contractors must comply with Section 6002 of the Solid Waste Disposal Act, Public Law No. 89-272 (1965) (codified as amended by the Resource Conservation and Recovery Act at 42 U.S.C. § 6962).
- (b.) In the performance of this contract, the contractor shall make maximum use of products containing recovered materials that are EPA-designated items unless the product cannot be acquired—
  - (1) Competitively within a timeframe providing for compliance with the contract performance schedule;
  - (2) Meeting contract performance requirements; or
  - (3) At a reasonable price.
- (c) Information about this requirement is available at EPA’s Comprehensive Procurement Guidelines website, <http://www.epa.gov/cpg/>. The list of EPA-designated items is available at <https://www.epa.gov/cpg/products.htm>.

In the event of any discrepancy between the provisions in this Section 61 of General Provisions and provisions on the same subject elsewhere within this procurement, the most stringent shall control.

**64. ENTIRETY OF AGREEMENT AND MODIFICATION**

This contract contains the entire agreement between the parties. Any prior agreement, promise, negotiation or representation not expressly set forth in this contract has no force or effect. Any subsequent modification to this contract must be in writing, signed by both parties.

An official representative, employee, or agent of the County does not have the authority to modify or amend this contract except pursuant to specific authority to do so granted by the Galveston County Commissioners’ Court.

**65. NOTICE**

All notices or other communications required or permitted under this contract shall be in writing and shall be deemed to have been duly given if delivered personally in hand, transmitted by facsimile, or mailed certified mail, return receipt requested with proper postage affixed and addressed to the appropriate party at the following address or at such other address as may have been previously given in writing to the parties (Bidder shall provide its notice information with its Bid submission). If mailed, the notice shall be deemed delivered when actually received, or if earlier, on the third day following deposit in a United States Postal Service post office or receptacle, duly certified, return receipt requested, with proper postage affixed. If delivered in person, notice shall be deemed delivered when receipted for by, or actually received by, the receiving Party. If transmitted by facsimile, notice shall be deemed delivered when receipt of such transmission is acknowledged.

**To the County at:**

Hon. Mark Henry,  
County Judge of Galveston County  
722 Moody (21<sup>st</sup> Street), Second (2<sup>nd</sup>) Floor  
Galveston, Texas 77550  
Fax: (409) 765-2653

**GENERAL PROVISIONS – INVITATION TO BID  
HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT  
GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS**

**With copies to:**

Rufus Crowder, CPPO CPPB,  
Galveston County Purchasing Agent  
722 Moody (21<sup>st</sup> Street), Fifth (5<sup>th</sup>) Floor  
Galveston, Texas 77550  
Fax: (409) 621-7997

**To the Contractor at:**

(Bidder to provide its contact name, address, and facsimile number for notice under the contract.)

**66. USE OF DHS SEAL, LOGO, AND FLAGS PROHIBITED WITHOUT PRIOR APROVAL**

Contractor must obtain permission from the U.S. Department of Homeland Security financial assistance office (DHS FAO) **prior** to using DHS seals(s), logos, crests, or reproductions of flags or likenesses of DHS agency officials, including use of the United States Coast Guard seal, logo, crests or reproductions of flags or likenesses of Coast Guard Officials.

**67. FEDERAL GOVERNMENT NOT A PARTY**

Contractor acknowledges that the Federal Government is not a party to the contract and is not subject to any obligations or liabilities to Galveston County, contractor, or any other party pertaining to any matter resulting from the contract.

**68. PROGRAM FRAUD AND FALSE OR FRAUDULENT STATEMENTS OR RELATED ACTS**

In contracts funded through Federal grants, Contractor acknowledges that 31 U.S.C. Chapter 38, Administrative Remedies for False Claims and Statements (31 U.S.C. § 3801, et seq.) and the implementing regulations thereunder, 49 C.F.R. Part 79, apply to Contractors actions pertaining to the contract.

**69. LEAD AND ASBESTOS**

If this invitation to bid involves remediation, demolition, reconstruction, rehabilitation, repair, or construction, or other applicable activities, the Contractor shall be responsible for performing investigations of lead and asbestos containing materials, and any required lead and asbestos abatement in compliance with Federal, State, and local laws, rules, regulations, ordinances and orders, relating to lead abatement and asbestos abatement as applicable, including but not limited to the Texas Asbestos Health Protection Act, codified as Chapter 1954 of the Occupations Code; the Texas Asbestos Health Protection Regulations, located at Title 25, Part 1, Chapter 295, Subchapter C of the Texas Administrative Code; Chapter 1955 of the Texas Occupations Code (lead-based paint abatement); the Texas Environmental Lead Reduction regulations, located at Title 25, Part 1, Chapter 295, Subchapter I of the Texas Administrative Code; the federal National Emission Standards for Asbestos regulations, located at Title 40, Part 61, Subpart M of the Code of Federal Regulations, and the National Emission Standards for Hazardous Air Pollutants. Contractor shall perform such inspections, encapsulation, remediation or other actions as required by federal, State, or local requirements in accordance with the federal Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), Texas Department of State Health Services (TXDSHS), and Texas Commission on Environmental Quality (TCEQ) requirements.

**GENERAL PROVISIONS – INVITATION TO BID  
HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT  
GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS**

**70. ACKNOWLEDGMENT OF GOVERNMENT RECORD**

Bidder acknowledges that its submission in this Invitation to Bid, including its response, bid, certifications, affidavits, Vendor Forms (i.e., PEID, W-9, CIQ, etc.) constitutes government records under Chapter 37 of the Texas Penal Code.

**71. COMPLIANCE WITH GALVESTON COUNTY PURCHASING POLICIES AND PROCEDURES**

Bidder acknowledges, by its submission in this Invitation to Bid, that it shall comply with the Galveston County Purchasing Policies & Procedures Manual approved by Order of the Galveston County Commissioners Court on March 7, 2018.

*End of General Provisions Section*

*The remainder of this page intentionally left blank*



**SPECIAL PROVISIONS  
HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT  
GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS**

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

A.	<b>PURPOSE</b> .....	1
B.	<b>DEFINITIONS</b> .....	1
C.	<b>BID SURETY</b> .....	1
D.	<b>PERFORMANCE AND PAYMENT BONDS</b> .....	1
E.	<b>DAVIS-BACON WAGE RATES</b> .....	1
F.	<b>BEST AND FINAL OFFERS (BAFO)</b> .....	1
G.	<b>PROCUREMENT TIMELINE</b> .....	2
H.	<b>PRE-BID CONFERENCE</b> .....	2
I.	<b>PERSONNEL TO CONTACT</b> .....	2-3
J.	<b>PROGRAM ADMINISTRATION &amp; CONTRACT MANAGEMENT</b> .....	3
K.	<b>TYPE OF CONTRACT</b> .....	4
L.	<b>COLLATERAL CONTRACT</b> .....	4
M.	<b>LABOR</b> .....	4
N.	<b>INSURANCE</b> .....	4-5
O.	<b>EXCEPTIONS</b> .....	5

**SPECIAL PROVISIONS  
HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT  
GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS**

The Special Provisions and the General Provisions of this Invitation to Bid and the Exhibits attached hereto are made a part of this agreement between the Parties. In the event of a conflict between the General Provisions and the Special Provisions, the terms of the Special Provisions shall control.

**A. PURPOSE**

Galveston County is seeking a vendor for the re-construction of approximately 1,500 linear feet of the west bank of the Highland Bayou Diversion Canal, between F.M. 2004 and Jay Road Ditch in Hitchcock, Galveston County, Texas. The existing slope is at a gradient of about 3.5H: 1V in order to prevent further slope failures. In addition, the backslope swales (two) situated behind top of slope need to be reconstructed. Interceptor Swale "A" is approximately 700 linear feet and will outfall into Jay Road Ditch. Interceptor Swale "B" is also about 700 feet in length and will outfall into an existing drainage ditch situated between FM 2004 and the south side of Sunrise Creek subdivision.

The engineer's construction cost estimate to complete this project is \$800,000.00.

**B. DEFINITIONS (As mentioned in FAR Subpart 52.2—Text of Provisions and Clauses)**

**52.202-1 Definitions.**

**Definitions (Nov 2013)**

When a solicitation provision or contract clause uses a word or term that is defined in the Federal Acquisition Regulation (FAR), the word or term has the same meaning as the definition in FAR [2.101](#) in effect at the time the solicitation was issued, unless—

- (a) The solicitation, or amended solicitation, provides a different definition;
- (b) The contracting parties agree to a different definition;
- (c) The part, subpart, or section of the FAR where the provision or clause is prescribed provides a different meaning; or
- (d) The word or term is defined in FAR [Part 31](#), for use in the cost principles and procedures

**C. BID SURETY**

A Bid surety/bond is a requirement of this solicitation.

**D. PERFORMANCE AND PAYMENT BONDS**

Performance and Payment Bonds are a requirement of this solicitation.

**E. DAVIS-BACON WAGE RATES**

Attention is called to the fact that not less than, the federally determined prevailing (Davis-Bacon and Related Acts) wage rate, as issued by the Office of Rural Community Affairs and contained in the contract documents, must be paid on this project. In addition, the successful bidder must ensure that employees and applicants for employment are not discriminated against because of race, color, religion, sex age or national origin.

**F. BEST AND FINAL OFFERS (BAFO)**

The Best and Final Offer process **is not applicable** to this solicitation.

**SPECIAL PROVISIONS  
HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT  
GALVESTON COUNTY**

**G. PROCUREMENT TIMELINE**

A timeline for this Bid and initial process is included below. Galveston County reserves the right to change these dates and will notify Bidders of any changes:

Advertise BID (first date of publication)	Wednesday, December 16, 2020
Advertise BID (second date of publication)	Wednesday, December 23, 2020
Pre-Bid Conference	Tuesday, January 5, 2021 @ 10:00 a.m.
Deadline for Questions & Inquiries	Friday, January 8, 2021 by 5:00 p.m.
Bids due from public/Bid Opening	Thursday, January 21, 2021 at 2:00 p.m.

**H. PRE-BID CONFERENCE**

**A non-mandatory pre-bid conference will be held on Tuesday, January 5, 2021 at 10:00 a.m.**

Due to the COVID-19 pandemic, the County of Galveston has instituted measures to guard against the spread of the virus. This includes the prohibition of in-person meetings, social distancing, and stay-at-home requirements for employees.

**The Pre-Bid Conference shall take place via video/tele-conference and the instructions are listed below and on the County's Purchasing website:**

**Minimum System Requirements for Video Conferencing:**

1. High-resolution webcam;
2. Computer processing minimum: 2 GB of RAM and a quad-core processor;
3. Network bandwidth: 1 Mbps is sufficient for 15 fps at 720p resolution;

**Calling from a mobile device:**

1. Front facing camera;
2. In ear headphone with built in mic

**Instructions for Video Conferencing:**

1. [Click here](https://guest.lifesize.com/1907077) or navigate to <https://guest.lifesize.com/1907077>
2. **Enter attendee name, attendee company name, and email address (for contact and addenda issuance purposes)**
3. Click the Terms of Service and Privacy Policy checkbox;
4. Click Join Meeting

**\*Note - be sure to enable audio and video.**

**I. PERSONNEL TO CONTACT**

Bidders desiring an explanation or interpretation relative to this solicitation must request it in writing. Oral explanations or instructions will not be binding. Any information given to a Bidder, which in the opinion of the County affects all responders or would be prejudicial to other Bidders if not communicated, shall be furnished to all Bidders as an addendum to the solicitation. Bidders **must** direct all inquiries to the following:

**Rufus G. Crowder, CPPO CPPB  
Purchasing Agent  
722 21<sup>st</sup> Street (Moody)  
Galveston, Texas 77550  
e-mail: [purchasing.bids@co.galveston.tx.us](mailto:purchasing.bids@co.galveston.tx.us)**

**SPECIAL PROVISIONS  
HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT  
GALVESTON COUNTY**

Bidders must e-mail their requests (with the subject line “**Highland Bayou Slope Stability Project – Bid# B211022– Questions**”) for additional information and/or clarification to the address listed above. The request must include the Bidder’s name and the BID number and title. ***Any request for additional information or clarification must be received in writing no later than seven (7) calendar days prior to the Bid due date.*** Late requests or those not delivered to the proper address may not receive a reply. Bidders shall not attempt to contact the County by any other means. The Purchasing Agent’s Office shall post the answers to the County website from the procurement web page and via addendum.

The County will issue responses to inquiries and any other corrections or amendments, it deems necessary, in the form of a written addendum, issued prior to the Bid Submission Date. The County, at its sole discretion, may not issue a response to an RFI submittal. Bidders should not rely on any oral or written representations, statements, or explanations, other than those made in this BID or in any written addendum to this BID. Where there appears to be conflict between the BID and any issued addenda, the last addendum issued will prevail. Addenda will be posted and made available on the County’s procurement web page. It is the Bidder’s sole responsibility to ensure receipt of all addenda prior to submitting its Bid. All Bidders should check the County’s procurement web page for all addenda prior to submitting a response. The County’s procurement web page is located at [www.galvestoncountytexas.gov/pu/Pages/default.aspx](http://www.galvestoncountytexas.gov/pu/Pages/default.aspx), and current solicitations are at [www.galvestoncountytexas.gov/pu/Pages/OpenSolicitations.aspx](http://www.galvestoncountytexas.gov/pu/Pages/OpenSolicitations.aspx).

The Bidder must acknowledge the receipt of all addenda on the forms provided. In the event a Bidder fails to acknowledge receipt of such addenda, the County may, at its sole discretion, determine that such failure to acknowledge any or all addenda does not materially affect the Bid and waive the acknowledgement of one or more addenda.

Bidders who submit inquiries *after* the deadline date for receipt of questions indicated on the Procurement Timeline, risk that its response in the procurement will not be responsive or competitive because the County is not able to respond before the Bid receipt date or in sufficient time for the Bidder to prepare a responsive or competitive submittal.

All questions and responses as posted on the County website pertaining to this BID are considered an addendum to, and part of, this BID. Each Bidder shall be responsible to monitor the County website for new or revised BID information. The County shall not be bound by any verbal information nor shall it be bound by any written information that is not either contained within the BID or formally issued as an addendum by the Purchasing Agent’s Office.

**J. PROGRAM ADMINISTRATION & CONTRACT MANAGEMENT**

The Program Administrator/Contract Manager that will manage the work to be performed under the resultant contract for the purpose of this bid is:

**Michael Shannon  
Galveston County Engineer  
722 Moody, (21<sup>st</sup> St.), 1<sup>st</sup> Floor  
Galveston, TX 77550**

**SPECIAL PROVISIONS  
HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT  
GALVESTON COUNTY**

**K. TYPE OF CONTRACT**

It is the intent of this solicitation to enter into a contract that meets federal guidelines. It is imperative that all responders seeking a contract under this solicitation effort must familiarize and adhere to the procurement standards as referenced in 2 C.F.R. Part 200, Sections 200.317-200.326, and Appendix II, 2 C.F.R. Part 200. Sections 200.317–200.326 and Appendix II are attached hereto as **Attachment A**.

The resultant contract consists of the following documents: Invitation to Bid, General Provisions, Special Provisions, General Terms and Conditions (including specifications, drawings, and addenda), Bidder's Bid, Bid Sheets, contract award, and any other documents referenced herein or attached hereto for the work. Collectively these documents may also be referred to as the Plans and Specifications.

*In an effort to satisfy cost reasonableness responsibilities at the time of any extension period, the County of Galveston reserves the right to obtain additional quotes and current pricing information from the successful contractor and other contractors to perform the work as stated per the specification listed herein and in the resultant. The solicited results may be used by the County to determine if the contract extensions will be considered or other service options be utilized.*

**L. COLLATERAL CONTRACT**

The County reserves the right to provide by separate contract or otherwise, in such manner as not to delay its programs or damage said Contractor, all labor and material essential to the completion of the work that is not included in this contract.

Award prices include all royalties and costs arising from patents, trademarks, and copyrights in any way involved in the work. Whenever the Awardee is required or desires to use any design, device, material or process covered by letters of patent or copyright, the Awardee shall indemnify and save harmless the County, its officers, agents and employees from any and all claims for infringement by reason of the use of any such patented design, tool, material, equipment, or process, to be performed under the contract, and shall indemnify the County its officers, agents, and employees for any costs, expenses and damages which may be incurred by reason of any infringement at any time during the prosecution or after the completion of the work.

**M. LABOR**

Contractor is encouraged to use local labor, but not at the expense of poor workmanship and higher cost. Contractor will not discriminate against any employee or applicant for employment because of race, religion, color, sex or national origin. Contractor agrees to post in a conspicuous place a notice setting forth provisions of this non-discrimination clause.

**N. INSURANCE**

Bidder must submit, with its response, a current certificate of insurance evidencing coverage in the amounts specified below or greater. In lieu of submitting a certificate of insurance, Respondents may submit a notarized statement from an insurance company authorized to conduct business in the State of Texas guaranteeing that Respondent has such insurance. Provided however, that successful Respondent(s) shall be required to provide a current certificate of insurance to the Galveston County Purchasing Agent's Office before Respondent commences any work hereunder. **Insurance shall be placed with insurers having an A.M. Best's rating of no less than A.** Such insurance must be issued by a casualty company authorized to do business in the State of Texas, and in standard form approved by

**SPECIAL PROVISIONS  
HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT  
GALVESTON COUNTY**

the Board of Insurance Commissioners of the State of Texas, with coverage provisions insuring the public from loss or damage that may arise to any person or property by reason of services rendered by Contractor.

**Galveston County shall be listed as an additional insured on each policy and all certificates of insurance and Contractor shall provide Galveston County with no less than thirty (30) calendar days prior notice of any changes to the policy during the contractual period.**

Certificates of Insurance, fully executed by a licensed representative of the insurance company written or countersigned by an authorized Texas state agency, shall be filed with the County Purchasing Agent within ten (10) calendar days of the execution of this Agreement as written proof of such insurance and further provided that Contractor shall not commence work under this Agreement until Contractor has obtained all insurance required herein, provided written proof as required herein, and received written notice to proceed issued from the County Purchasing Agent. **Failure to provide such evidence of insurance within the ten (10) calendar day period shall constitute an event of default.**

Workers' Compensation Insurance. Respondent shall carry in full force Workers' Compensation Insurance Policy(ies), if there is more than one employee, for all its employees, including but not limited to full time, part time, and emergency employees employed by the Contractor.

Commercial General Liability. Respondent shall carry in full force commercial general liability insurance with a limit of not less than \$1,000,000 each occurrence and \$2,000,000 in the aggregate. The Policy shall, minimally, cover liability for bodily injury, personal injury, and property damage.

Business Automobile Liability. Respondent shall carry in full force business automobile liability coverage with a combined bodily injury/property damage limit of not less than \$1,000,000 each accident. The policy shall cover liability arising from the operation of licensed vehicles by policyholder.

Professional Liability. Respondent shall carry in full force professional liability insurance with limits of not less than \$1,000,000.00.

**Subrogation Waiver.** Contractor and Contractor's insurance carrier shall waive any and all rights to subrogation against Galveston County in regard to any suit or claim arising out of personal injury or property damage resulting from Contractor's performance under this Agreement.

**O. EXCEPTIONS**

**Any exceptions to Bid conditions should be listed on a separated sheet of paper, attached to Bid submittals and submitted with Bid at the specified date and time of Bid opening.**

*Remainder of page intentionally left blank*

**EXHIBIT A  
HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT  
GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS**

**PROCUREMENT STANDARDS**

**2 C.F.R. §§ 200.317 – 200.326 &  
2 C.F.R. PART 200, APPENDIX II**

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

2 C.F.R. § 200.317. Procurements by states.....	2
2 C.F.R. § 200.318. General procurement standards.....	2-3
2 C.F.R. § 200.319. Competition.....	4-5
2 C.F.R. § 200.320. Methods of procurement to be followed.....	5-7
2 C.F.R. § 200.321. Contracting with small and minority businesses, women's business enterprises, and labor surplus area firms.....	7
2 C.F.R. § 200.322. Procurement of recovered materials.....	8
2 C.F.R. § 200.323. Contract cost and price.....	8
2 C.F.R. § 200.324. Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity review.....	8-9
2 C.F.R. § 200.325. Bonding requirements.....	9-10
2 C.F.R. § 200.326. Contract provisions.....	10
2 C.F.R. Part, 200, Appendix II.....	11-12

**EXHIBIT A  
HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT  
GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS**

**PROCUREMENT STANDARDS**

**2 C.F.R. §§ 200.317 – 200.326 &  
2 C.F.R. PART 200, APPENDIX II**

**2 C.F.R. § 200.317. Procurements by states.**

When procuring property and services under a Federal award, a state must follow the same policies and procedures it uses for procurements from its non-Federal funds. The state will comply with §200.322 Procurement of recovered materials and ensure that every purchase order or other contract includes any clauses required by section §200.326 Contract provisions. All other non-Federal entities, including sub-recipients of a state, will follow §§ 200.318 General procurement standards through 200.326 Contract provisions.

69 FR 26280, May 11, 2004; 78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013

**2 C.F.R. § 200.318. General procurement standards.**

(a) The non-Federal entity must use its own documented procurement procedures which reflect applicable State, local and tribal laws and regulations, provided that the procurements conform to applicable Federal law and the standards identified in this part.

(b) Non-Federal entities must maintain oversight to ensure that contractors perform in accordance with the terms, conditions, and specifications of their contracts or purchase orders.

(c)

(1) The non-Federal entity must maintain written standards of conduct covering conflicts of interest and governing the actions of its employees engaged in the selection, award and administration of contracts. No employee, officer, or agent may participate in the selection, award, or administration of a contract supported by a Federal award if he or she has a real or apparent conflict of interest. Such a conflict of interest would arise when the employee, officer, or agent, any member of his or her immediate family, his or her partner, or an organization which employs or is about to employ any of the parties indicated herein, has a financial or other interest in or a tangible personal benefit from a firm considered for a contract. The officers, employees, and agents of the non-Federal entity may neither solicit nor accept gratuities, favors, or anything of monetary value from contractors or parties to subcontracts. However, non-Federal entities may set standards for situations in which the financial interest is not substantial or the gift is an unsolicited item of nominal value. The standards of conduct must provide for disciplinary actions to be applied for violations of such standards by officers, employees, or agents of the non-Federal entity.

(2) If the non-Federal entity has a parent, affiliate, or subsidiary organization that is not a state, local government, or Indian tribe, the non-Federal entity must also maintain written standards of conduct covering organizational conflicts of interest. Organizational conflicts of interest means that because of



**EXHIBIT A**  
**HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT**  
**GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS**

relationships with a parent company, affiliate, or subsidiary organization, the non-Federal entity is unable or appears to be unable to be impartial in conducting a procurement action involving a related organization.

- (d) The non-Federal entity's procedures must avoid acquisition of unnecessary or duplicative items. Consideration should be given to consolidating or breaking out procurements to obtain a more economical purchase. Where appropriate, an analysis will be made of lease versus purchase alternatives, and any other appropriate analysis to determine the most economical approach.
- (e) To foster greater economy and efficiency, and in accordance with efforts to promote cost-effective use of shared services across the Federal Government, the non-Federal entity is encouraged to enter into state and local intergovernmental agreements or inter-entity agreements where appropriate for procurement or use of common or shared goods and services.
- (f) The non-Federal entity is encouraged to use Federal excess and surplus property in lieu of purchasing new equipment and property whenever such use is feasible and reduces project costs.
- (g) The non-Federal entity is encouraged to use value engineering clauses in contracts for construction projects of sufficient size to offer reasonable opportunities for cost reductions. Value engineering is a systematic and creative analysis of each contract item or task to ensure that its essential function is provided at the overall lower cost.
- (h) The non-Federal entity must award contracts only to responsible contractors possessing the ability to perform successfully under the terms and conditions of a proposed procurement. Consideration will be given to such matters as contractor integrity, compliance with public policy, record of past performance, and financial and technical resources. See also § 200.213 Suspension and debarment.
- (i) The non-Federal entity must maintain records sufficient to detail the history of procurement. These records will include, but are not necessarily limited to the following: rationale for the method of procurement, selection of contract type, contractor selection or rejection, and the basis for the contract price.
- (j)
- (1) The non-Federal entity may use a time and materials type contract only after a determination that no other contract is suitable and if the contract includes a ceiling price that the contractor exceeds at its own risk. Time and materials type contract means a contract whose cost to a non-Federal entity is the sum of:
- (i) The actual cost of materials; and
  - (ii) Direct labor hours charged at fixed hourly rates that reflect wages, general and administrative expenses, and profit.
- (2) Since this formula generates an open-ended contract price, a time-and-materials contract provides no positive profit incentive to the contractor for cost control or labor efficiency. Therefore, each contract must set a ceiling price that the contractor exceeds at its own risk. Further, the non-Federal entity awarding such a contract must assert a high degree of oversight in order to obtain reasonable assurance that the contractor is using efficient methods and effective cost controls.

**EXHIBIT A**  
**HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT**  
**GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS**

(k) The non-Federal entity alone must be responsible, in accordance with good administrative practice and sound business judgment, for the settlement of all contractual and administrative issues arising out of procurements. These issues include, but are not limited to, source evaluation, protests, disputes, and claims. These standards do not relieve the non-Federal entity of any contractual responsibilities under its contracts. The Federal awarding agency will not substitute its judgment for that of the non-Federal entity unless the matter is primarily a Federal concern. Violations of law will be referred to the local, state, or Federal authority having proper jurisdiction.

78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 79 FR 75885, Dec. 19, 2014; 80 FR 43309, July 22, 2015; 80 FR 45395, July 30, 2015

**2 C.F.R. § 200.319. Competition.**

(a) All procurement transactions must be conducted in a manner providing full and open competition consistent with the standards of this section. In order to ensure objective contractor performance and eliminate unfair competitive advantage, contractors that develop or draft specifications, requirements, statements of work, or invitations for bids or requests for proposals must be excluded from competing for such procurements. Some of the situations considered to be restrictive of competition include but are not limited to:

- (1) Placing unreasonable requirements on firms in order for them to qualify to do business;
- (2) Requiring unnecessary experience and excessive bonding;
- (3) Noncompetitive pricing practices between firms or between affiliated companies;
- (4) Noncompetitive contracts to consultants that are on retainer contracts;
- (5) Organizational conflicts of interest;
- (6) Specifying only a “brand name” product instead of allowing “an equal” product to be offered and describing the performance or other relevant requirements of the procurement; and
- (7) Any arbitrary action in the procurement process.

(b) The non-Federal entity must conduct procurements in a manner that prohibits the use of statutorily or administratively imposed state, local, or tribal geographical preferences in the evaluation of bids or proposals, except in those cases where applicable Federal statutes expressly mandate or encourage geographic preference. Nothing in this section preempts state licensing laws. When contracting for architectural and engineering (A/E) services, geographic location may be a selection criterion provided its application leaves an appropriate number of qualified firms, given the nature and size of the project, to compete for the contract.

(c) The non-Federal entity must have written procedures for procurement transactions. These procedures must ensure that all solicitations:

- (1) Incorporate a clear and accurate description of the technical requirements for the material, product, or service to be procured. Such description must not, in competitive procurements, contain features which unduly

**EXHIBIT A**  
**HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT**  
**GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS**

restrict competition. The description may include a statement of the qualitative nature of the material, product or service to be procured and, when necessary, must set forth those minimum essential characteristics and standards to which it must conform if it is to satisfy its intended use. Detailed product specifications should be avoided if at all possible. When it is impractical or uneconomical to make a clear and accurate description of the technical requirements, a “brand name or equivalent” description may be used as a means to define the performance or other salient requirements of procurement. The specific features of the named brand which must be met by offers must be clearly stated; and

(2) Identify all requirements which the offerors must fulfill and all other factors to be used in evaluating bids or proposals.

(d) The non-Federal entity must ensure that all prequalified lists of persons, firms, or products which are used in acquiring goods and services are current and include enough qualified sources to ensure maximum open and free competition. Also, the non-Federal entity must not preclude potential bidders from qualifying during the solicitation period.

78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 79 FR 75885, Dec. 19, 2014

**2 C.F.R. § 200.320. Methods of procurement to be followed.**

The non-Federal entity must use one of the following methods of procurement.

(a) Procurement by micro-purchases. Procurement by micro-purchase is the acquisition of supplies or services, the aggregate dollar amount of which does not exceed the micro-purchase threshold (§200.67 Micro-purchase). To the extent practicable, the non-Federal entity must distribute micro-purchases equitably among qualified suppliers. Micro-purchases may be awarded without soliciting competitive quotations if the non-Federal entity considers the price to be reasonable.

(b) Procurement by small purchase procedures. Small purchase procedures are those relatively simple and informal procurement methods for securing services, supplies, or other property that do not cost more than the Simplified Acquisition Threshold. If small purchase procedures are used, price or rate quotations must be obtained from an adequate number of qualified sources.

(c) Procurement by sealed bids (formal advertising). Bids are publicly solicited and a firm fixed price contract (lump sum or unit price) is awarded to the responsible bidder whose bid, conforming with all the material terms and conditions of the invitation for bids, is the lowest in price. The sealed bid method is the preferred method for procuring construction, if the conditions in paragraph (c)(1) of this section apply.

(1) In order for sealed bidding to be feasible, the following conditions should be present:

(i) A complete, adequate, and realistic specification or purchase description is available;

(ii) Two or more responsible bidders are willing and able to compete effectively for the business; and

(iii) The procurement lends itself to a firm fixed price contract and the selection of the successful bidder can be made principally on the basis of price.

**EXHIBIT A**  
**HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT**  
**GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS**

(2) If sealed bids are used, the following requirements apply:

(i) Bids must be solicited from an adequate number of known suppliers, providing them sufficient response time prior to the date set for opening the bids, for local, and tribal governments, the invitation for bids must be publicly advertised;

(ii) The invitation for bids, which will include any specifications and pertinent attachments, must define the items or services in order for the bidder to properly respond;

(iii) All bids will be opened at the time and place prescribed in the invitation for bids, and for local and tribal governments, the bids must be opened publicly;

(iv) A firm fixed price contract award will be made in writing to the lowest responsive and responsible bidder. Where specified in bidding documents, factors such as discounts, transportation cost, and life cycle costs must be considered in determining which bid is lowest. Payment discounts will only be used to determine the low bid when prior experience indicates that such discounts are usually taken advantage of; and

(v) Any or all bids may be rejected if there is a sound documented reason.

(d) Procurement by competitive proposals. The technique of competitive proposals is normally conducted with more than one source submitting an offer, and either a fixed price or cost-reimbursement type contract is awarded. It is generally used when conditions are not appropriate for the use of sealed bids. If this method is used, the following requirements apply:

(1) Requests for proposals must be publicized and identify all evaluation factors and their relative importance. Any response to publicized requests for proposals must be considered to the maximum extent practical;

(2) Proposals must be solicited from an adequate number of qualified sources;

(3) The non-Federal entity must have a written method for conducting technical evaluations of the proposals received and for selecting recipients;

(4) Contracts must be awarded to the responsible firm whose proposal is most advantageous to the program, with price and other factors considered; and

(5) The non-Federal entity may use competitive proposal procedures for qualifications-based procurement of architectural/engineering (A/E) professional services whereby competitors' qualifications are evaluated and the most qualified competitor is selected, subject to negotiation of fair and reasonable compensation. The method, where price is not used as a selection factor, can only be used in procurement of A/E professional services. It cannot be used to purchase other types of services though A/E firms are a potential source to perform the proposed effort.

(e) [Reserved]

**EXHIBIT A**  
**HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT**  
**GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS**

(f) Procurement by noncompetitive proposals. Procurement by noncompetitive proposals is procurement through solicitation of a proposal from only one source and may be used only when one or more of the following circumstances apply:

- (1) The item is available only from a single source;
- (2) The public exigency or emergency for the requirement will not permit a delay resulting from competitive solicitation;
- (3) The Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity expressly authorizes noncompetitive proposals in response to a written request from the non-Federal entity; or
- (4) After solicitation of a number of sources, competition is determined inadequate.

78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 79 FR 75885, Dec. 19, 2014; 80 FR 54409, Sept. 10, 2015

**2 C.F.R. § 200.321. Contracting with small and minority businesses, women's business enterprises, and labor surplus area firms.**

- (a) The non-Federal entity must take all necessary affirmative steps to assure that minority businesses, women's business enterprises, and labor surplus area firms are used when possible.
- (b) Affirmative steps must include:
  - (1) Placing qualified small and minority businesses and women's business enterprises on solicitation lists;
  - (2) Assuring that small and minority businesses, and women's business enterprises are solicited whenever they are potential sources;
  - (3) Dividing total requirements, when economically feasible, into smaller tasks or quantities to permit maximum participation by small and minority businesses, and women's business enterprises;
  - (4) Establishing delivery schedules, where the requirement permits, which encourage participation by small and minority businesses, and women's business enterprises;
  - (5) Using the services and assistance, as appropriate, of such organizations as the Small Business Administration and the Minority Business Development Agency of the Department of Commerce; and
  - (6) Requiring the prime contractor, if subcontracts are to be let, to take the affirmative steps listed in paragraphs (1) through (5) of this section.

69 FR 26280, May 11, 2004; 78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, unless otherwise noted

**EXHIBIT A**  
**HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT**  
**GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS**

**2 C.F.R. § 200.322. Procurement of recovered materials.**

A non-Federal entity that is a state agency or agency of a political subdivision of a state and its contractors must comply with section 6002 of the Solid Waste Disposal Act, as amended by the Resource Conservation and Recovery Act. The requirements of Section 6002 include procuring only items designated in guidelines of the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) at 40 CFR part 247 that contain the highest percentage of recovered materials practicable, consistent with maintaining a satisfactory level of competition, where the purchase price of the item exceeds \$10,000 or the value of the quantity acquired during the preceding fiscal year exceeded \$10,000; procuring solid waste management services in a manner that maximizes energy and resource recovery; and establishing an affirmative procurement program for procurement of recovered materials identified in the EPA guidelines.

78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 79 FR 75885, Dec. 19, 2014

**2 C.F.R. § 200.323. Contract cost and price.**

(a) The non-Federal entity must perform a cost or price analysis in connection with every procurement action in excess of the Simplified Acquisition Threshold including contract modifications. The method and degree of analysis is dependent on the facts surrounding the particular procurement situation, but as a starting point, the non-Federal entity must make independent estimates before receiving bids or proposals.

(b) The non-Federal entity must negotiate profit as a separate element of the price for each contract in which there is no price competition and in all cases where cost analysis is performed. To establish a fair and reasonable profit, consideration must be given to the complexity of the work to be performed, the risk borne by the contractor, the contractor's investment, the amount of subcontracting, the quality of its record of past performance, and industry profit rates in the surrounding geographical area for similar work.

(c) Costs or prices based on estimated costs for contracts under the Federal award are allowable only to the extent that costs incurred or cost estimates included in negotiated prices would be allowable for the non-Federal entity under Subpart E—Cost Principles of this part. The non-Federal entity may reference its own cost principles that comply with the Federal cost principles.

(d) The cost plus a percentage of cost and percentage of construction cost methods of contracting must not be used.

69 FR 26280, May 11, 2004; 78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, unless otherwise noted

**2 C.F.R. § 200.324. Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity review.**

(a) The non-Federal entity must make available, upon request of the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity, technical specifications on proposed procurements where the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity believes such review is needed to ensure that the item or service specified is the one being proposed for acquisition. This review generally will take place prior to the time the specification is incorporated into a solicitation document. However, if the non-Federal entity desires to have the review accomplished after a solicitation has been developed, the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity may still review the specifications, with such review usually limited to the technical aspects of the proposed purchase.

**EXHIBIT A**  
**HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT**  
**GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS**

(b) The non-Federal entity must make available upon request, for the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity pre-procurement review, procurement documents, such as requests for proposals or invitations for bids, or independent cost estimates, when:

(1) The non-Federal entity's procurement procedures or operation fails to comply with the procurement standards in this part;

(2) The procurement is expected to exceed the Simplified Acquisition Threshold and is to be awarded without competition or only one bid or offer is received in response to a solicitation;

(3) The procurement, which is expected to exceed the Simplified Acquisition Threshold, specifies a "brand name" product;

(4) The proposed contract is more than the Simplified Acquisition Threshold and is to be awarded to other than the apparent low bidder under a sealed bid procurement; or

(5) A proposed contract modification changes the scope of a contract or increases the contract amount by more than the Simplified Acquisition Threshold.

(c) The non-Federal entity is exempt from the pre-procurement review in paragraph (b) of this section if the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity determines that its procurement systems comply with the standards of this part.

(1) The non-Federal entity may request that its procurement system be reviewed by the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity to determine whether its system meets these standards in order for its system to be certified. Generally, these reviews must occur where there is continuous high-dollar funding, and third party contracts are awarded on a regular basis;

(2) The non-Federal entity may self-certify its procurement system. Such self-certification must not limit the Federal awarding agency's right to survey the system. Under a self-certification procedure, the Federal awarding agency may rely on written assurances from the non-Federal entity that it is complying with these standards. The non-Federal entity must cite specific policies, procedures, regulations, or standards as being in compliance with these requirements and have its system available for review.

69 FR 26280, May 11, 2004; 78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, unless otherwise noted

**2 C.F.R. § 200.325. Bonding requirements.**

For construction or facility improvement contracts or subcontracts exceeding the Simplified Acquisition Threshold, the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity may accept the bonding policy and requirements of the non-Federal entity provided that the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity has made a determination that the Federal interest is adequately protected. If such a determination has not been made, the minimum requirements must be as follows:

(a) A bid guarantee from each bidder equivalent to five percent of the bid price. The "bid guarantee" must consist of a firm commitment such as a bid bond, certified check, or other negotiable instrument accompanying a bid as assurance that the bidder will, upon acceptance of the bid, execute such contractual documents as may be required within the time specified.

**EXHIBIT A**  
**HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT**  
**GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS**

(b) A performance bond on the part of the contractor for 100 percent of the contract price. A “performance bond” is one executed in connection with a contract to secure fulfillment of all the contractor's obligations under such contract.

(c) A payment bond on the part of the contractor for 100 percent of the contract price. A “payment bond” is one executed in connection with a contract to assure payment as required by law of all persons supplying labor and material in the execution of the work provided for in the contract.

69 FR 26280, May 11, 2004; 78FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, unless otherwise noted

**2 C.F.R. § 200.326. Contract provisions.**

The non-Federal entity's contracts must contain the applicable provisions described in Appendix II to Part 200—Contract Provisions for non-Federal Entity Contracts Under Federal Awards.

69 FR 26280, May 11, 2004; 78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, unless otherwise note



**EXHIBIT A**  
**HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT**  
**GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS**

2 C.F.R. Part, 200, Appendix II

In addition to other provisions required by the Federal agency or non-Federal entity, all contracts made by the non-Federal entity under the Federal award must contain provisions covering the following, as applicable.

(A) Contracts for more than the simplified acquisition threshold currently set at \$150,000, which is the inflation adjusted amount determined by the Civilian Agency Acquisition Council and the Defense Acquisition Regulations Council (Councils) as authorized by 41 U.S.C. 1908, must address administrative, contractual, or legal remedies in instances where contractors violate or breach contract terms, and provide for such sanctions and penalties as appropriate.

(B) All contracts in excess of \$10,000 must address termination for cause and for convenience by the non-Federal entity including the manner by which it will be effected and the basis for settlement.

(C) Equal Employment Opportunity. Except as otherwise provided under 41 CFR Part 60, all contracts that meet the definition of "federally assisted construction contract" in 41 CFR Part 60-1.3 must include the equal opportunity clause provided under 41 CFR 60-1.4(b), in accordance with Executive Order 11246, "Equal Employment Opportunity" (30 FR 12319, 12935, 3 CFR Part, 1964-1965 Comp., p. 339), as amended by Executive Order 11375, "Amending Executive Order 11246 Relating to Equal Employment Opportunity," and implementing regulations at 41 CFR part 60, "Office of Federal Contract Compliance Programs, Equal Employment Opportunity, Department of Labor."

(D) Davis-Bacon Act, as amended (40 U.S.C. 3141-3148). When required by Federal program legislation, all prime construction contracts in excess of \$2,000 awarded by non-Federal entities must include a provision for compliance with the Davis-Bacon Act (40 U.S.C. 3141-3144, and 3146-3148) as supplemented by Department of Labor regulations (29 CFR Part 5, "Labor Standards Provisions Applicable to Contracts Covering Federally Financed and Assisted Construction"). In accordance with the statute, contractors must be required to pay wages to laborers and mechanics at a rate not less than the prevailing wages specified in a wage determination made by the Secretary of Labor. In addition, contractors must be required to pay wages not less than once a week. The non-Federal entity must place a copy of the current prevailing wage determination issued by the Department of Labor in each solicitation. The decision to award a contract or subcontract must be conditioned upon the acceptance of the wage determination. The non-Federal entity must report all suspected or reported violations to the Federal awarding agency. The contracts must also include a provision for compliance with the Copeland "Anti-Kickback" Act (40 U.S.C. 3145), as supplemented by Department of Labor regulations (29 CFR Part 3, "Contractors and Subcontractors on Public Building or Public Work Financed in Whole or in Part by Loans or Grants from the United States"). The Act provides that each contractor or subrecipient must be prohibited from inducing, by any means, any person employed in the construction, completion, or repair of public work, to give up any part of the compensation to which he or she is otherwise entitled. The non-Federal entity must report all suspected or reported violations to the Federal awarding agency.

(E) Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act (40 U.S.C. 3701-3708). Where applicable, all contracts awarded by the non-Federal entity in excess of \$100,000 that involve the employment of mechanics or laborers must include a provision for compliance with 40 U.S.C. 3702 and 3704, as supplemented by Department of Labor regulations (29 CFR Part 5). Under 40 U.S.C. 3702 of the Act, each contractor must be required to compute the wages of every mechanic and laborer on the basis of a standard work week of 40 hours. Work in excess of the standard work week is permissible provided that the worker is compensated at a rate of not less than one and a half times the basic rate of pay for all hours worked in excess of 40 hours in the work week. The requirements of 40 U.S.C. 3704 are applicable to construction work and provide that no laborer or mechanic must be required to work in surroundings or under working conditions which are unsanitary, hazardous or

**EXHIBIT A**  
**HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT**  
**GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS**

dangerous. These requirements do not apply to the purchases of supplies or materials or articles ordinarily available on the open market, or contracts for transportation or transmission of intelligence.

(F) Rights to Inventions Made Under a Contract or Agreement. If the Federal award meets the definition of “funding agreement” under 37 CFR §401.2 (a) and the recipient or subrecipient wishes to enter into a contract with a small business firm or nonprofit organization regarding the substitution of parties, assignment or performance of experimental, developmental, or research work under that “funding agreement,” the recipient or subrecipient must comply with the requirements of 37 CFR Part 401, “Rights to Inventions Made by Nonprofit Organizations and Small Business Firms Under Government Grants, Contracts and Cooperative Agreements,” and any implementing regulations issued by the awarding agency.

(G) Clean Air Act (42 U.S.C. 7401-7671q.) and the Federal Water Pollution Control Act (33 U.S.C. 1251-1387), as amended—Contracts and subgrants of amounts in excess of \$150,000 must contain a provision that requires the non-Federal award to agree to comply with all applicable standards, orders or regulations issued pursuant to the Clean Air Act (42 U.S.C. 7401-7671q) and the Federal Water Pollution Control Act as amended (33 U.S.C. 1251-1387). Violations must be reported to the Federal awarding agency and the Regional Office of the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA).

(H) Debarment and Suspension (Executive Orders 12549 and 12689)—A contract award (see 2 CFR 180.220) must not be made to parties listed on the governmentwide exclusions in the System for Award Management (SAM), in accordance with the OMB guidelines at 2 CFR 180 that implement Executive Orders 12549 (3 CFR part 1986 Comp., p. 189) and 12689 (3 CFR part 1989 Comp., p. 235), “Debarment and Suspension.” SAM Exclusions contains the names of parties debarred, suspended, or otherwise excluded by agencies, as well as parties declared ineligible under statutory or regulatory authority other than Executive Order 12549.

(I) Byrd Anti-Lobbying Amendment (31 U.S.C. 1352)—Contractors that apply or bid for an award exceeding \$100,000 must file the required certification. Each tier certifies to the tier above that it will not and has not used Federal appropriated funds to pay any person or organization for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any agency, a member of Congress, officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a member of Congress in connection with obtaining any Federal contract, grant or any other award covered by 31 U.S.C. 1352. Each tier must also disclose any lobbying with non-Federal funds that takes place in connection with obtaining any Federal award. Such disclosures are forwarded from tier to tier up to the non-Federal award.

(J) See §200.322 Procurement of recovered materials.

78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 79 FR 75888, Dec. 19, 2014

**CERTIFICATION REGARDING LOBBYING**  
**(31 U.S.C.A. § 1352)**  
**This Certification must be completed, signed, dated and**  
**returned to the Galveston County Purchasing Agent**

**Procurement Number and Description:** \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_ ITB #B211022, Highland Bayou Slope Stability Project \_\_\_\_\_

Proposer **CERTIFIES**, to the best of its knowledge and belief, that:

1. No Federal appropriated funds have been paid or will be paid, by or on behalf of the proposer, to any person for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of an agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with the awarding of any Federal contract, the making of any Federal grant, the making of any Federal loan, the entering into of any cooperative agreement, and the extension, continuation, renewal, amendment, or modification of any Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement.
2. If any funds other than Federal appropriated funds have been paid or will be paid to any person for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with this Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement, the proposer shall complete and submit **Standard Form LLL**, "Disclosure Form to Report Lobbying", in accordance with its instructions.
3. Proposer shall require that the language of this certification be included in the award documents for all subawards at all tiers (including subcontracts, subgrants, and contracts under grants, loans, and cooperative agreements) and that all subrecipients shall certify and disclose accordingly.

This certification is a material representation of fact upon which reliance was placed when this transaction was made or entered into. Submission of this certification is a prerequisite for making or entering into this transaction imposed by Section 1352, Title 31, U.S. Code. Any person who fails to file the required certification shall be subject to a civil penalty of not less than \$10,000 and not more than \$100,000 for each such failure.

Name of Organization/Corporation: \_\_\_\_\_

Address: \_\_\_\_\_

City: \_\_\_\_\_ State: \_\_\_\_\_ Zip Code: \_\_\_\_\_

Signature of Authorized Signatory for Proposer: \_\_\_\_\_ Date Signed: \_\_\_\_\_

Title of Authorized Signatory of Proposer: \_\_\_\_\_

State of Texas

§

§

County of Galveston

§

**NON-COLLUSION AFFIDAVIT**

Before me, the undersigned notary, on this day personally appeared \_\_\_\_\_ (Affiant), whom being first duly sworn, deposes and certifies that:

- Affiant is the \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_, that  
(Individual, Partner, Corporate Officer) (Name of Qualifier)  
submitted the attached Qualification in **Bid No. B211022, Highland Bayou Slope Stability Project**
- Affiant is a duly authorized representative of Qualifier and is authorized to make this Non-Collusion Affidavit;
- The attached Qualification is genuine and is not a collusive or sham Qualification;
- The attached Qualification has been independently arrived at without collusion with any other qualifier, bidder, proposer, person, firm, competitor, or potential competitor;
- Qualifier has not colluded, conspired, connived or agreed, directly or indirectly, with any other qualifier, bidder, proposer, person, firm, competitor, or potential competitor, to submit a collusive or sham qualification or that such other qualifier, bidder, proposer, person, firm, competitor, or potential competitor shall refrain from qualifying;
- Qualifier has not in any manner, directly or indirectly, sought by agreement or collusion or communication or conference with any other qualifier, bidder, proposer, person, firm, competitor, or potential competitor to fix the price or prices in the attached Qualification or of the qualification any other qualifier;
- Qualifier has not in any manner, directly or indirectly, sought by agreement or collusion or communication or conference with any other qualifier bidder, proposer, person, firm, competitor, or potential competitor to fix the overhead, profit or cost element of the Qualification price or prices of any other qualifier, or to secure through any collusion, conspiracy, connivance, or unlawful agreement any advantage against Galveston County or any person interested in the proposed contract;
- Affiant has not in any manner, directly or indirectly, sought by agreement or collusion or communication or conference with any other qualifier, bidder, proposer, person, firm, competitor, or potential competitor, paid or agreed to pay any other qualifier, bidder, proposer, person, firm, competitor, or potential competitor any money or anything of value in return for assistance in procuring or attempting to procure a contract or in return for establishing the price or prices in the attached Qualification or the qualification of any other Qualifier; and
- Affiant certifies that Affiant is fully informed regarding the accuracy of the statements contained herein, and under penalties of perjury, certifies and affirms the truth of the statements herein, such penalties being applicable to the Qualifier as well as to Affiant signing on its behalf.

\_\_\_\_\_  
**Signature of Affiant**

**SWORN TO and SUBSCRIBED** before me this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_\_\_\_.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Notary Public

My Commission Expires: \_\_\_\_\_

**BID FORM**  
**HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT**  
**COUNTY OF GALVESTON, TEXAS**

By signing here, the firm does hereby attest that it has fully read the instructions, conditions and general and special provisions and understands them.

THE COMPANY OF: \_\_\_\_\_

ADDRESS: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

FEIN (TAX ID): \_\_\_\_\_

The following shall be returned with your bid. Failure to do so may be ample cause for rejection of bid as non-responsive. It is the responsibility of the Bidder to ensure that bidder has received all addenda.

<b>Items:</b>	<b>Confirmed (X):</b>
1. References (if required)	_____
2. Addenda, if any	#1 _____ #2 _____ #3 _____ #4 _____
3. One (1) original and two (2) copies of submittal	_____
4. Bid Form	_____
5. Vendor Qualification Packet	_____
6. Debarment Certification Form	_____
7. Non-Collusion Affidavit	_____
8. Payment Terms:	_____ net 30 _____ Other
9. Lobbyist Certification	_____
10. Bid Bond	_____

Person to contact regarding this bid: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_ Phone: \_\_\_\_\_ Fax: \_\_\_\_\_

E-mail address: \_\_\_\_\_

Name of person authorized to bind the Firm: \_\_\_\_\_

Signature: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_ Phone: \_\_\_\_\_ Fax: \_\_\_\_\_

E-mail address: \_\_\_\_\_

**BID FORM**  
**HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT**  
**GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS**

Bidder shall use this form to provide the information for notice.

1. Contact information for notice:

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Address: \_\_\_\_\_

Telephone Number: \_\_\_\_\_ Facsimile number: \_\_\_\_\_

2. If a copy of notice is requested, please complete below:

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Address: \_\_\_\_\_

Telephone Number: \_\_\_\_\_ Facsimile number: \_\_\_\_\_

3. If second or more copies are requested for notice, please supplement this form and clearly mark the supplement as "Supplementary Notice Information."

Bidder to submit reference information. Bidder shall use this form to provide minimum required reference information. If Bidder wishes to provide more than the minimum, Bidder should supplement this form and should clearly mark the supplement as "Supplementary Reference Information."

1. References who can attest to the Bidder's capability to carry out the requirements set forth in this bid:

Business Name of Organization: \_\_\_\_\_

Name of Person: \_\_\_\_\_

Title of Individual within Organization, if applicable \_\_\_\_\_

Business address: \_\_\_\_\_

Telephone number: \_\_\_\_\_ Facsimile number: \_\_\_\_\_

Business Name of Organization: \_\_\_\_\_

Name of Person: \_\_\_\_\_

Title of Individual within Organization, if applicable \_\_\_\_\_

Business address: \_\_\_\_\_

Telephone number: \_\_\_\_\_ Facsimile number: \_\_\_\_\_

Business Name of Organization: \_\_\_\_\_

Name of Person: \_\_\_\_\_

Title of Individual within Organization, if applicable \_\_\_\_\_

Business address: \_\_\_\_\_

Telephone number: \_\_\_\_\_ Facsimile number: \_\_\_\_\_

**BID FORM**  
**HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY PROJECT**  
**GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS**

References of major supplier of Bidder who can speak to the financial capability of the Bidder to carry out the requirements set forth in this bid:

1. Business Name of Supplier \_\_\_\_\_  
Name of Person: \_\_\_\_\_  
Title of Individual within business: \_\_\_\_\_  
Business address: \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
Telephone number: \_\_\_\_\_ Facsimile number: \_\_\_\_\_
  
2. Business Name of Supplier \_\_\_\_\_  
Name of Person: \_\_\_\_\_  
Title of Individual within business: \_\_\_\_\_  
Business address: \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
Telephone number: \_\_\_\_\_ Facsimile number: \_\_\_\_\_
  
3. Business Name of Supplier \_\_\_\_\_  
Name of Person: \_\_\_\_\_  
Title of Individual within business: \_\_\_\_\_  
Business address: \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
Telephone number: \_\_\_\_\_ Facsimile number: \_\_\_\_\_

*The remainder of this page intentionally left blank*



## County of Galveston

### ACKNOWLEDGMENT AND CERTIFICATION REGARDING DEBARMENT, SUSPENSION, AND OTHER INELIGIBILITY

#### Executive Orders 12549 & 12689 Certification, Debarment and Suspension

Solicitation Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Solicitation Title: \_\_\_\_\_

#### **Contractor hereby CERTIFIES that:**

Contractor, and all of its principals, is not presently debarred, suspended, proposed for debarment, proposed for suspension, or declared ineligible under Executive Order 12549 or Executive Order 12689, Debarment and Suspension, and is not in any other way ineligible for participation in Federal or State assistance programs;

Contractor, and all of its principals, were not and have not been debarred, suspended, proposed for debarment, proposed for suspension, or declared ineligible under Executive Order 12549 or Executive Order 12689, Debarment and Suspension, and were not and have not been in any other way ineligible for participation in Federal or State assistance programs at the time its' proposal was submitted in the procurement identified herein and at any time since submission of its' proposal;

Contractor has included, and shall continue to include, this certification in all contracts between itself and any sub-contractors in connection with services performed under this contract; **and**

Contractor shall notify Galveston County in writing immediately, through written notification to the Galveston County Purchasing Agent, if Contractor is not in compliance with Executive Order 12549 or 12689 during the term of its contract with Galveston County.

Contractor **Represents** and **Warrants** that the individual executing this Acknowledgment and Certification on its behalf has the full power and authority to do so and can legally bind the Contractor hereto.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Name of Business

\_\_\_\_\_  
Date

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Signature

\_\_\_\_\_  
Printed Name & Title





## County of Galveston Purchasing Department Vendor Qualification Packet

(rev. 1.4, September 28, 2017)

All interested parties seeking consideration for qualified vendor status with the County of Galveston should complete and return only the following forms to:

Galveston County Purchasing Department  
722 Moody Avenue, (21st Street), 5<sup>th</sup> Floor  
Galveston, Texas 77550  
(409) 770-5371 office  
(409) 621-7987 fax

**PEID Form:** Person /Entity Information Data

**W -9 Form:** Request for Taxpayer Identification Number and Certification  
*(please note that the included form may not be the latest revised form issued by the Internal Revenue Service. Please check the IRS website at <http://www.irs.gov/pub/irs-rd/eflw9.pdf> for the latest revision of this form.)*

**CIQ Form:** Conflict of Interest Questionnaire

*(please note that the included form may not be the latest revised form issued by the State of Texas Ethics Commission. Please check the Texas Ethics Commission website at [http://www.ethics.state.tx.us/whatsnew/conflict\\_forms.htm](http://www.ethics.state.tx.us/whatsnew/conflict_forms.htm) for the latest revision of this form. Please note that Galveston County Purchasing Agent is not responsible for the filing of this form with the Galveston County Clerk per instructions of the State of Texas Ethics Commission).*

**Debarment:** **CERTIFICATION REGARDING DEBARMENT, SUSPENSION, PROPOSED DEBARMENT, AND OTHER RESPONSIBILITY MATTERS & REQUIREMENT TO REGISTER IN SAM**

*Vendors/contractor certifies that neither it, nor any of its Principals, are presently debarred, suspended, proposed for debarment, disqualified, excluded, or in any way declared ineligible for the award of contracts by any Federal agency. Vendor agrees that it shall refund Galveston County for any payments made to Contractor while ineligible. Vendor acknowledges that Contractor's uncured failure to perform under any agreement with the County of Galveston, if such should occur, may result in Contractor being debarred from performing additional work for the County, the respecting State Agency administering the grant funding the contract, if applicable, the State, FEMA or HUD (as applicable), and other Federal and State entities. Further, Vendor has executed the Certification Regarding Debarment, Suspension, Proposed Debarment, and Other Responsibility Matters and returned the fully completed and executed original certification with the submission of this Vendor Qualification Packet. **The truthful and fully completed and executed original of the Certification Regarding Debarment, Suspension, Proposed Debarment, and Other Responsibility Matters must be included with the submission of this Vendor Qualification Packet and is a mandatory requirement to become a vendor of Galveston County. Vendor's failure to include the fully completed and executed original of this Certification shall be considered non-compliant with the requirements of this vendor qualification request and grounds for the rejection of vendor's request. Vendor shall immediately notify the County Purchasing Agent if it becomes debarred or suspended, placed on***

*the Consolidated List of Debarred Contractors, or in any other way becomes ineligible for award of contract by any Federal agency. This Certification is a material fact relied upon by Galveston County; if it is later determined that the vendor did not comply with 2 C. F. R. Part 180 and 2 C.F.R. Part 3000, in addition to the remedies available to Galveston County and the State agency administering a grant, the Federal Government may pursue available remedies, including but not limited to suspension and/or debarment of contractor. If the contract to be awarded pursuant to a Galveston County procurement effort involves the use of Federal funds, then vendor must also be registered in the Federal Contractor Registry through the System for Award Management (SAM) to be eligible for award of contract pursuant to the procurement.*

Information regarding the SAM is available at:

<http://federalcontractorregistry.com/?gclid=CIGlhf2rr8wCFYkCaQoducANZw> or at <http://sam.gov/portal/SAM/#1>.

*No contract involving the use of Federal funds may be awarded to any vendor unless and until such registration is current and in good standing under SAM Successful vendors must maintain SAM registration throughout the entire term of any contractual agreement with the County. If a contract involves the use of Federal funds, then vendor must enclose proof of such SAM registration within its response, which is also a mandatory requirement of County procurement policy; failure to enclose such proof shall be considered non-compliant with the requirements of any procurement effort and grounds for the rejection of vendor's response to any procurement efforts (i.e., bid, proposal, or qualifications statement, as applicable).*

**Direct Deposit: Direct Deposit Authorization Form – Temporarily suspended until further notice**

**Certificate(s) of Insurance: If the person or entity seeking qualified vendor status with the County will be performing work at or on any County owned facility and/or property, Certificate(s) of Insurance are required to be submitted prior to performing any work.**

Insurance requirements are as follows:

**Public Liability and Property Damage Insurance:**

Successful vendor agrees to keep in full force and effect, a policy of public liability and property damage insurance issued by a casualty company authorized to do business in the State of Texas, and in standard form approved by the Board of Insurance Commissioners of the State of Texas, with coverage provisions insuring the public from any loss or damage that may arise to any person or property by reason of services rendered by vendor. Vendor shall at its own expense be required to carry the following minimum insurance coverages:

1. For damages arising out of bodily injury to or death of one person in anyone occurrence - one hundred thousand and no/100 dollars (\$100,000.00);
2. For damages arising out of bodily injury to or death of two or more persons in anyone occurrence - three hundred thousand and no/100 dollars (\$300,000.00); and
3. For injury to or destruction of property in anyone occurrence - one hundred thousand and no/100 dollars (\$100,000.00).

This insurance shall be either on an occurrence basis or on a claims made basis. Provided however, that if the coverage is on a claims made basis, then the vendor shall be required to purchase, at the termination of this agreement, tail coverage for the County for the period of the County's relationship with the vendor under this agreement. Such coverage shall be in the amounts set forth in subparagraphs (1), (2), and (3) above.

**Worker's Compensation Insurance:**

Successful vendor shall also carry in full force Workers' Compensation Insurance policy(ies), if there is more than one employee, for all employees, including but not limited to full time, part time, and emergency employees employed by the vendor. Current insurance certificates certifying that such policies as specified above are in full force and effect shall be furnished by the vendor to the County.

**The County of Galveston shall be named as additional insured on policies listed in subparagraphs above and shall be notified of any changes to the policy(ies) during the contractual period.**

Insurance is to be placed with insurers having a Best rating of no less than A. The vendor shall furnish the County with certificates of insurance and original endorsements affecting coverage required by these insurance clauses. The certificates and endorsements for each insurance policy are to be signed by a person authorized by the insurer to bind coverage on its behalf. The vendor shall be required to submit annual renewals for the term of any contractual agreement, purchase order or term contract, with Galveston County prior to expiration of any policy.

In addition to the remedies stated herein, the County has the right to pursue other remedies permitted by law or in equity.

The County agrees to provide vendor with reasonable and timely notice of any claim, demand, or cause of action made or brought against the County arising out of or related to utilization of the property. Vendor shall have the right to defend any such claim, demand, or cause of action at its sole cost and expense and within its sole and exclusive discretion. The County agrees not to compromise or settle any claim or cause of action arising out of or related to the utilization of the property without the prior written consent of the vendor.

In no event shall the County be liable for any damage to or destruction of any property belonging to the vendor unless specified in writing and agreed upon by both parties.

**Procurement Policy - Special Note:**

Understand that it is, according to Texas Local Government Code, Section 262.011, Purchasing Agents, subsections (d), (e), and (0), the sole responsibility of the Purchasing Agent to supervise all procurement transactions.

Therefore, be advised that all procurement transactions require proper authorization in the form of a Galveston County purchase order from the Purchasing Agent's office prior to commitment to deliver supplies, materials, equipment, including contracts for repair, service, and maintenance agreements. Any commitments made without proper authorization from the Purchasing Agent's office, pending Commissioners' Court approval, may become the sole responsibility of the individual making the commitment including the obligation of payment.

**Code of Ethics - Statement of Purchasing Policy:**

Public employment is a public trust. It is the policy of Galveston County to promote and balance the objective of protecting the County's integrity and the objective of facilitating the recruitment and retention of personnel needed by Galveston County. Such policy is implemented by prescribing essential standards of ethical conduct without creating unnecessary obstacles to entering public office.

Public employees must discharge their duties impartially so as to assure fair competitive access to governmental procurement by responsible contractors. Moreover, they should conduct themselves in such a manner as to foster public confidence in the integrity of the Galveston County procurement organization.

To achieve the purpose of these instructions, it is essential that those doing business with Galveston County also observe the ethical standards prescribed here.

**General Ethical Standards:** It shall be a breach of ethics to attempt to realize personal gain through public employment with Galveston County by any conduct inconsistent with the proper discharge of the employee's duties.

It shall be a breach of ethics to attempt to influence any public employee of Galveston County to breach the standards of ethical conduct set forth in this code.

It shall be a breach of ethics for any employee of Galveston County to participate directly or indirectly in procurement when the employee knows that:

- The employee or any member of the employee's immediate family has a financial interest pertaining to the procurement.
- A business or organization in which the employee, or any member of the employee's immediate family, has a financial interest pertaining to the procurement.
- Any other person, business or organization with which the employee or any member of the employee's immediate family is negotiating or has an arrangement concerning prospective employment is involved in the procurement.

**Gratuities:** It shall be a breach of ethics to offer, give or agree to give any employee of Galveston County, or for any employee or former employee of Galveston County to solicit, demand, accept or agree to accept from another person, a gratuity or an offer of employment in connection with any decision, approval, disapproval, recommendation, preparation of any part of a program requirement or purchase request, influencing the content of any specification or procurement standard, rendering of advice, investigation, auditing, or in any other advisory capacity in any program requirement or a contract or subcontract, or to any solicitation or proposal therefore pending before this government.

**Kickbacks:** It shall be a breach of ethics for any payment, gratuity or offer of employment to be made by or on behalf of a subcontractor under a contract to the prime contractor or higher tier subcontractor for any contract for Galveston County, or any person associated therewith, as an inducement for the award of a subcontract or order.

**Contract Clause:** The prohibition against gratuities and kickbacks prescribed above shall be conspicuously set forth in every contract and solicitation by Galveston County.

**Confidential Information:** It shall be a breach of ethics for any employee or former employee of Galveston County to knowingly use confidential information for actual or anticipated personal gain, or for the actual or anticipated gain of any person.

**Questions/Concerns:**

If you have any questions or concerns regarding the information or instructions contained within this packet, please contact any member of the Purchasing Department staff at **(409) 770-5371**.

**CONFLICT OF INTEREST DISCLOSURE REPORTING**

Proposer may be required under Chapter 176 of the Texas Local Government Code to complete and file a conflict of interest questionnaire (CIQ Form). If so, the completed CIQ Form must be filed with the County Clerk of Galveston County, Texas.

If Proposer has an employment or other business relationship with an officer of Galveston County or with a family member of an officer of Galveston County that results in the officer or family member of the officer receiving taxable income that exceeds \$2,500.00 during the preceding 12-month period, then Proposer **MUST** complete a CIQ Form and file the original of the CIQ Form with the County Clerk of Galveston County.

If Proposer has given an officer of Galveston County or a family member of an officer of Galveston County one or more gifts with an aggregate value of more than \$250.00 during the preceding 12-months, then Proposer **MUST** complete a CIQ Form and file the original of the CIQ Form with the County Clerk of Galveston County

The Galveston County Clerk has offices at the following locations:

Galveston County Clerk  
Galveston County Justice Center, Suite 2001  
600 59th Street  
Galveston, Texas 77551

Galveston County Clerk  
North County Annex, 1st Floor  
174 Calder Road  
League City, Texas 77573

Again, if Proposer is required to file a CIQ Form, the original completed form is filed with the Galveston County Clerk (not the Purchasing Agent).

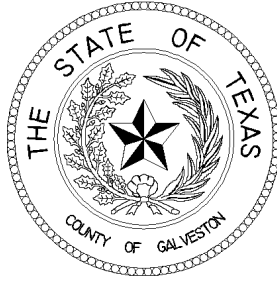
For Proposer's convenience, a blank CIQ Form is enclosed with this proposal. Blank CIQ Forms may also be obtained by visiting the Galveston County Clerk's website and/or the Purchasing Agent's website - both of these web sites are linked to the Galveston County homepage at <http://www.galvestoncountytexas.gov>

As well, blank CIQ Forms may be obtained by visiting the Texas Ethics Commission website, specifically at <http://www.ethics.state.tx.us/whatsnew/conflictfroms.htm>

Chapter 176 specifies deadlines for the filing of CIQ Forms (both initial filings and updated filings).

It is Proposer's sole responsibility to file a true and complete CIQ Form with the Galveston County Clerk if Proposer is required to file by the requirements of Chapter 176. Proposer is advised that it is an offense to fail to comply with the disclosure reporting requirements dictated under Chapter 176 of the Texas Local Government Code.

If you have questions about compliance with Chapter 176, please consult your own legal counsel. Compliance is the individual responsibility of each person, business, and agent who is subject to Chapter 176 of the Texas Local Government Code.



## COUNTY of GALVESTON

### Purchasing Department

rev. 1.3, March 29, 2010

<b>FORM PEID:</b>	<b>Request for Person-Entity Identification Data</b>
-------------------	--

Instructions: Please type or print clearly when completing sections 1 thru 4 and return completed form to:

**Galveston County Purchasing Agent**  
**722 Moody Avenue (21 st. Street), 5th Floor**  
**Galveston, Texas 77550**  
**(409) 770-5371**  
*prodoc@co.galveston.tx.us*

1.	<b>Business Name:</b>			
	<b>Attention Line:</b>			
2.	<b>Physical Address:</b>			
	<b>City:</b>		<b>State:</b>	<b>Zip+4:</b>
3.	<b>Billing / Remit Address:</b>			
	<b>City:</b>		<b>State:</b>	<b>Zip+4</b>
4.	<b>Main Contact Person:</b>			
	<b>Main Phone Number:</b>			
	<b>Fax Number:</b>			
	<b>E-mail Address:</b>			

**Areas below are for County use only.**

<b>Requested By:</b>	<b>Phone / Ext. #</b>
<b>Department:</b>	<b>Date:</b>

<b>Action Requested - Check One:</b>	<b>IFAS PEID Vendor Number:</b>	
<input type="checkbox"/> Add New	<input type="checkbox"/> Change Data	<input type="checkbox"/> Re-activate
<input type="checkbox"/> Inactivate	<input type="checkbox"/> Employee	<input type="checkbox"/> Attorney
<input type="checkbox"/> Landlord	<input type="checkbox"/> Foster Parent	<input type="checkbox"/> Refund
<input type="checkbox"/> OneTime	<input type="checkbox"/> Foster Child	

# Request for Taxpayer Identification Number and Certification

**Give Form to the  
 requester. Do not  
 send to the IRS.**

▶ Go to [www.irs.gov/FormW9](http://www.irs.gov/FormW9) for instructions and the latest information.

<b>Print or type.</b> See Specific Instructions on page 3.	1 Name (as shown on your income tax return). Name is required on this line; do not leave this line blank.	
	2 Business name/disregarded entity name, if different from above	
	3 Check appropriate box for federal tax classification of the person whose name is entered on line 1. Check only <b>one</b> of the following seven boxes.	4 Exemptions (codes apply only to certain entities, not individuals; see instructions on page 3):
	<input type="checkbox"/> Individual/sole proprietor or single-member LLC <input type="checkbox"/> C Corporation <input type="checkbox"/> S Corporation <input type="checkbox"/> Partnership <input type="checkbox"/> Trust/estate	Exempt payee code (if any) _____
	<input type="checkbox"/> Limited liability company. Enter the tax classification (C=C corporation, S=S corporation, P=Partnership) ▶ _____ <b>Note:</b> Check the appropriate box in the line above for the tax classification of the single-member owner. Do not check LLC if the LLC is classified as a single-member LLC that is disregarded from the owner unless the owner of the LLC is another LLC that is <b>not</b> disregarded from the owner for U.S. federal tax purposes. Otherwise, a single-member LLC that is disregarded from the owner should check the appropriate box for the tax classification of its owner.	Exemption from FATCA reporting code (if any) _____
	<input type="checkbox"/> Other (see instructions) ▶ _____ (Applies to accounts maintained outside the U.S.)	
	5 Address (number, street, and apt. or suite no.) See instructions.	Requester's name and address (optional)
6 City, state, and ZIP code		
7 List account number(s) here (optional)		

## Part I Taxpayer Identification Number (TIN)

Enter your TIN in the appropriate box. The TIN provided must match the name given on line 1 to avoid backup withholding. For individuals, this is generally your social security number (SSN). However, for a resident alien, sole proprietor, or disregarded entity, see the instructions for Part I, later. For other entities, it is your employer identification number (EIN). If you do not have a number, see *How to get a TIN*, later.

**Note:** If the account is in more than one name, see the instructions for line 1. Also see *What Name and Number To Give the Requester* for guidelines on whose number to enter.

<b>Social security number</b>									
-				-					
<b>or</b>									
<b>Employer identification number</b>									
-									

## Part II Certification

Under penalties of perjury, I certify that:

1. The number shown on this form is my correct taxpayer identification number (or I am waiting for a number to be issued to me); and
2. I am not subject to backup withholding because: (a) I am exempt from backup withholding, or (b) I have not been notified by the Internal Revenue Service (IRS) that I am subject to backup withholding as a result of a failure to report all interest or dividends, or (c) the IRS has notified me that I am no longer subject to backup withholding; and
3. I am a U.S. citizen or other U.S. person (defined below); and
4. The FATCA code(s) entered on this form (if any) indicating that I am exempt from FATCA reporting is correct.

**Certification instructions.** You must cross out item 2 above if you have been notified by the IRS that you are currently subject to backup withholding because you have failed to report all interest and dividends on your tax return. For real estate transactions, item 2 does not apply. For mortgage interest paid, acquisition or abandonment of secured property, cancellation of debt, contributions to an individual retirement arrangement (IRA), and generally, payments other than interest and dividends, you are not required to sign the certification, but you must provide your correct TIN. See the instructions for Part II, later.

<b>Sign Here</b>	Signature of U.S. person ▶	Date ▶
------------------	----------------------------	--------

## General Instructions

Section references are to the Internal Revenue Code unless otherwise noted.

**Future developments.** For the latest information about developments related to Form W-9 and its instructions, such as legislation enacted after they were published, go to [www.irs.gov/FormW9](http://www.irs.gov/FormW9).

### Purpose of Form

An individual or entity (Form W-9 requester) who is required to file an information return with the IRS must obtain your correct taxpayer identification number (TIN) which may be your social security number (SSN), individual taxpayer identification number (ITIN), adoption taxpayer identification number (ATIN), or employer identification number (EIN), to report on an information return the amount paid to you, or other amount reportable on an information return. Examples of information returns include, but are not limited to, the following.

- Form 1099-INT (interest earned or paid)

- Form 1099-DIV (dividends, including those from stocks or mutual funds)
- Form 1099-MISC (various types of income, prizes, awards, or gross proceeds)
- Form 1099-B (stock or mutual fund sales and certain other transactions by brokers)
- Form 1099-S (proceeds from real estate transactions)
- Form 1099-K (merchant card and third party network transactions)
- Form 1098 (home mortgage interest), 1098-E (student loan interest), 1098-T (tuition)
- Form 1099-C (canceled debt)
- Form 1099-A (acquisition or abandonment of secured property)

Use Form W-9 only if you are a U.S. person (including a resident alien), to provide your correct TIN.

*If you do not return Form W-9 to the requester with a TIN, you might be subject to backup withholding. See What is backup withholding, later.*

By signing the filled-out form, you:

1. Certify that the TIN you are giving is correct (or you are waiting for a number to be issued),
2. Certify that you are not subject to backup withholding, or
3. Claim exemption from backup withholding if you are a U.S. exempt payee. If applicable, you are also certifying that as a U.S. person, your allocable share of any partnership income from a U.S. trade or business is not subject to the withholding tax on foreign partners' share of effectively connected income, and
4. Certify that FATCA code(s) entered on this form (if any) indicating that you are exempt from the FATCA reporting, is correct. See *What is FATCA reporting*, later, for further information.

**Note:** If you are a U.S. person and a requester gives you a form other than Form W-9 to request your TIN, you must use the requester's form if it is substantially similar to this Form W-9.

**Definition of a U.S. person.** For federal tax purposes, you are considered a U.S. person if you are:

- An individual who is a U.S. citizen or U.S. resident alien;
- A partnership, corporation, company, or association created or organized in the United States or under the laws of the United States;
- An estate (other than a foreign estate); or
- A domestic trust (as defined in Regulations section 301.7701-7).

**Special rules for partnerships.** Partnerships that conduct a trade or business in the United States are generally required to pay a withholding tax under section 1446 on any foreign partners' share of effectively connected taxable income from such business. Further, in certain cases where a Form W-9 has not been received, the rules under section 1446 require a partnership to presume that a partner is a foreign person, and pay the section 1446 withholding tax. Therefore, if you are a U.S. person that is a partner in a partnership conducting a trade or business in the United States, provide Form W-9 to the partnership to establish your U.S. status and avoid section 1446 withholding on your share of partnership income.

In the cases below, the following person must give Form W-9 to the partnership for purposes of establishing its U.S. status and avoiding withholding on its allocable share of net income from the partnership conducting a trade or business in the United States.

- In the case of a disregarded entity with a U.S. owner, the U.S. owner of the disregarded entity and not the entity;
- In the case of a grantor trust with a U.S. grantor or other U.S. owner, generally, the U.S. grantor or other U.S. owner of the grantor trust and not the trust; and
- In the case of a U.S. trust (other than a grantor trust), the U.S. trust (other than a grantor trust) and not the beneficiaries of the trust.

**Foreign person.** If you are a foreign person or the U.S. branch of a foreign bank that has elected to be treated as a U.S. person, do not use Form W-9. Instead, use the appropriate Form W-8 or Form 8233 (see Pub. 515, *Withholding of Tax on Nonresident Aliens and Foreign Entities*).

**Nonresident alien who becomes a resident alien.** Generally, only a nonresident alien individual may use the terms of a tax treaty to reduce or eliminate U.S. tax on certain types of income. However, most tax treaties contain a provision known as a "saving clause." Exceptions specified in the saving clause may permit an exemption from tax to continue for certain types of income even after the payee has otherwise become a U.S. resident alien for tax purposes.

If you are a U.S. resident alien who is relying on an exception contained in the saving clause of a tax treaty to claim an exemption from U.S. tax on certain types of income, you must attach a statement to Form W-9 that specifies the following five items.

1. The treaty country. Generally, this must be the same treaty under which you claimed exemption from tax as a nonresident alien.
2. The treaty article addressing the income.
3. The article number (or location) in the tax treaty that contains the saving clause and its exceptions.
4. The type and amount of income that qualifies for the exemption from tax.
5. Sufficient facts to justify the exemption from tax under the terms of the treaty article.

**Example.** Article 20 of the U.S.-China income tax treaty allows an exemption from tax for scholarship income received by a Chinese student temporarily present in the United States. Under U.S. law, this student will become a resident alien for tax purposes if his or her stay in the United States exceeds 5 calendar years. However, paragraph 2 of the first Protocol to the U.S.-China treaty (dated April 30, 1984) allows the provisions of Article 20 to continue to apply even after the Chinese student becomes a resident alien of the United States. A Chinese student who qualifies for this exception (under paragraph 2 of the first protocol) and is relying on this exception to claim an exemption from tax on his or her scholarship or fellowship income would attach to Form W-9 a statement that includes the information described above to support that exemption.

If you are a nonresident alien or a foreign entity, give the requester the appropriate completed Form W-8 or Form 8233.

## Backup Withholding

**What is backup withholding?** Persons making certain payments to you must under certain conditions withhold and pay to the IRS 24% of such payments. This is called "backup withholding." Payments that may be subject to backup withholding include interest, tax-exempt interest, dividends, broker and barter exchange transactions, rents, royalties, nonemployee pay, payments made in settlement of payment card and third party network transactions, and certain payments from fishing boat operators. Real estate transactions are not subject to backup withholding.

You will not be subject to backup withholding on payments you receive if you give the requester your correct TIN, make the proper certifications, and report all your taxable interest and dividends on your tax return.

**Payments you receive will be subject to backup withholding if:**

1. You do not furnish your TIN to the requester,
2. You do not certify your TIN when required (see the instructions for Part II for details),
3. The IRS tells the requester that you furnished an incorrect TIN,
4. The IRS tells you that you are subject to backup withholding because you did not report all your interest and dividends on your tax return (for reportable interest and dividends only), or
5. You do not certify to the requester that you are not subject to backup withholding under 4 above (for reportable interest and dividend accounts opened after 1983 only).

Certain payees and payments are exempt from backup withholding. See *Exempt payee code*, later, and the separate Instructions for the Requester of Form W-9 for more information.

Also see *Special rules for partnerships*, earlier.

## What is FATCA Reporting?

The Foreign Account Tax Compliance Act (FATCA) requires a participating foreign financial institution to report all United States account holders that are specified United States persons. Certain payees are exempt from FATCA reporting. See *Exemption from FATCA reporting code*, later, and the Instructions for the Requester of Form W-9 for more information.

## Updating Your Information

You must provide updated information to any person to whom you claimed to be an exempt payee if you are no longer an exempt payee and anticipate receiving reportable payments in the future from this person. For example, you may need to provide updated information if you are a C corporation that elects to be an S corporation, or if you no longer are tax exempt. In addition, you must furnish a new Form W-9 if the name or TIN changes for the account; for example, if the grantor of a grantor trust dies.

## Penalties

**Failure to furnish TIN.** If you fail to furnish your correct TIN to a requester, you are subject to a penalty of \$50 for each such failure unless your failure is due to reasonable cause and not to willful neglect.

**Civil penalty for false information with respect to withholding.** If you make a false statement with no reasonable basis that results in no backup withholding, you are subject to a \$500 penalty.



**Criminal penalty for falsifying information.** Willfully falsifying certifications or affirmations may subject you to criminal penalties including fines and/or imprisonment.

**Misuse of TINs.** If the requester discloses or uses TINs in violation of federal law, the requester may be subject to civil and criminal penalties.

## Specific Instructions

### Line 1

You must enter one of the following on this line; **do not** leave this line blank. The name should match the name on your tax return.

If this Form W-9 is for a joint account (other than an account maintained by a foreign financial institution (FFI)), list first, and then circle, the name of the person or entity whose number you entered in Part I of Form W-9. If you are providing Form W-9 to an FFI to document a joint account, each holder of the account that is a U.S. person must provide a Form W-9.

a. **Individual.** Generally, enter the name shown on your tax return. If you have changed your last name without informing the Social Security Administration (SSA) of the name change, enter your first name, the last name as shown on your social security card, and your new last name.

**Note: ITIN applicant:** Enter your individual name as it was entered on your Form W-7 application, line 1a. This should also be the same as the name you entered on the Form 1040/1040A/1040EZ you filed with your application.

b. **Sole proprietor or single-member LLC.** Enter your individual name as shown on your 1040/1040A/1040EZ on line 1. You may enter your business, trade, or “doing business as” (DBA) name on line 2.

c. **Partnership, LLC that is not a single-member LLC, C corporation, or S corporation.** Enter the entity’s name as shown on the entity’s tax return on line 1 and any business, trade, or DBA name on line 2.

d. **Other entities.** Enter your name as shown on required U.S. federal tax documents on line 1. This name should match the name shown on the charter or other legal document creating the entity. You may enter any business, trade, or DBA name on line 2.

e. **Disregarded entity.** For U.S. federal tax purposes, an entity that is disregarded as an entity separate from its owner is treated as a “disregarded entity.” See Regulations section 301.7701-2(c)(2)(iii). Enter the owner’s name on line 1. The name of the entity entered on line 1 should never be a disregarded entity. The name on line 1 should be the name shown on the income tax return on which the income should be reported. For example, if a foreign LLC that is treated as a disregarded entity for U.S. federal tax purposes has a single owner that is a U.S. person, the U.S. owner’s name is required to be provided on line 1. If the direct owner of the entity is also a disregarded entity, enter the first owner that is not disregarded for federal tax purposes. Enter the disregarded entity’s name on line 2, “Business name/disregarded entity name.” If the owner of the disregarded entity is a foreign person, the owner must complete an appropriate Form W-8 instead of a Form W-9. This is the case even if the foreign person has a U.S. TIN.

### Line 2

If you have a business name, trade name, DBA name, or disregarded entity name, you may enter it on line 2.

### Line 3

Check the appropriate box on line 3 for the U.S. federal tax classification of the person whose name is entered on line 1. Check only one box on line 3.

IF the entity/person on line 1 is a(n) . . .	THEN check the box for . . .
• Corporation	Corporation
• Individual • Sole proprietorship, or • Single-member limited liability company (LLC) owned by an individual and disregarded for U.S. federal tax purposes.	Individual/sole proprietor or single-member LLC
• LLC treated as a partnership for U.S. federal tax purposes, • LLC that has filed Form 8832 or 2553 to be taxed as a corporation, or • LLC that is disregarded as an entity separate from its owner but the owner is another LLC that is not disregarded for U.S. federal tax purposes.	Limited liability company and enter the appropriate tax classification. (P= Partnership; C= C corporation; or S= S corporation)
• Partnership	Partnership
• Trust/estate	Trust/estate

### Line 4, Exemptions

If you are exempt from backup withholding and/or FATCA reporting, enter in the appropriate space on line 4 any code(s) that may apply to you.

#### Exempt payee code.

- Generally, individuals (including sole proprietors) are not exempt from backup withholding.
- Except as provided below, corporations are exempt from backup withholding for certain payments, including interest and dividends.
- Corporations are not exempt from backup withholding for payments made in settlement of payment card or third party network transactions.
- Corporations are not exempt from backup withholding with respect to attorneys’ fees or gross proceeds paid to attorneys, and corporations that provide medical or health care services are not exempt with respect to payments reportable on Form 1099-MISC.

The following codes identify payees that are exempt from backup withholding. Enter the appropriate code in the space in line 4.

- 1—An organization exempt from tax under section 501(a), any IRA, or a custodial account under section 403(b)(7) if the account satisfies the requirements of section 401(f)(2)
- 2—The United States or any of its agencies or instrumentalities
- 3—A state, the District of Columbia, a U.S. commonwealth or possession, or any of their political subdivisions or instrumentalities
- 4—A foreign government or any of its political subdivisions, agencies, or instrumentalities
- 5—A corporation
- 6—A dealer in securities or commodities required to register in the United States, the District of Columbia, or a U.S. commonwealth or possession
- 7—A futures commission merchant registered with the Commodity Futures Trading Commission
- 8—A real estate investment trust
- 9—An entity registered at all times during the tax year under the Investment Company Act of 1940
- 10—A common trust fund operated by a bank under section 584(a)
- 11—A financial institution
- 12—A middleman known in the investment community as a nominee or custodian
- 13—A trust exempt from tax under section 664 or described in section 4947

The following chart shows types of payments that may be exempt from backup withholding. The chart applies to the exempt payees listed above, 1 through 13.

IF the payment is for . . .	THEN the payment is exempt for . . .
Interest and dividend payments	All exempt payees except for 7
Broker transactions	Exempt payees 1 through 4 and 6 through 11 and all C corporations. S corporations must not enter an exempt payee code because they are exempt only for sales of noncovered securities acquired prior to 2012.
Barter exchange transactions and patronage dividends	Exempt payees 1 through 4
Payments over \$600 required to be reported and direct sales over \$5,000 <sup>1</sup>	Generally, exempt payees 1 through 5 <sup>2</sup>
Payments made in settlement of payment card or third party network transactions	Exempt payees 1 through 4

<sup>1</sup> See Form 1099-MISC, Miscellaneous Income, and its instructions.

<sup>2</sup> However, the following payments made to a corporation and reportable on Form 1099-MISC are not exempt from backup withholding: medical and health care payments, attorneys' fees, gross proceeds paid to an attorney reportable under section 6045(f), and payments for services paid by a federal executive agency.

**Exemption from FATCA reporting code.** The following codes identify payees that are exempt from reporting under FATCA. These codes apply to persons submitting this form for accounts maintained outside of the United States by certain foreign financial institutions. Therefore, if you are only submitting this form for an account you hold in the United States, you may leave this field blank. Consult with the person requesting this form if you are uncertain if the financial institution is subject to these requirements. A requester may indicate that a code is not required by providing you with a Form W-9 with "Not Applicable" (or any similar indication) written or printed on the line for a FATCA exemption code.

A—An organization exempt from tax under section 501(a) or any individual retirement plan as defined in section 7701(a)(37)

B—The United States or any of its agencies or instrumentalities

C—A state, the District of Columbia, a U.S. commonwealth or possession, or any of their political subdivisions or instrumentalities

D—A corporation the stock of which is regularly traded on one or more established securities markets, as described in Regulations section 1.1472-1(c)(1)(i)

E—A corporation that is a member of the same expanded affiliated group as a corporation described in Regulations section 1.1472-1(c)(1)(i)

F—A dealer in securities, commodities, or derivative financial instruments (including notional principal contracts, futures, forwards, and options) that is registered as such under the laws of the United States or any state

G—A real estate investment trust

H—A regulated investment company as defined in section 851 or an entity registered at all times during the tax year under the Investment Company Act of 1940

I—A common trust fund as defined in section 584(a)

J—A bank as defined in section 581

K—A broker

L—A trust exempt from tax under section 664 or described in section 4947(a)(1)

M—A tax exempt trust under a section 403(b) plan or section 457(g) plan

**Note:** You may wish to consult with the financial institution requesting this form to determine whether the FATCA code and/or exempt payee code should be completed.

### Line 5

Enter your address (number, street, and apartment or suite number). This is where the requester of this Form W-9 will mail your information returns. If this address differs from the one the requester already has on file, write NEW at the top. If a new address is provided, there is still a chance the old address will be used until the payor changes your address in their records.

### Line 6

Enter your city, state, and ZIP code.

## Part I. Taxpayer Identification Number (TIN)

**Enter your TIN in the appropriate box.** If you are a resident alien and you do not have and are not eligible to get an SSN, your TIN is your IRS individual taxpayer identification number (ITIN). Enter it in the social security number box. If you do not have an ITIN, see *How to get a TIN* below.

If you are a sole proprietor and you have an EIN, you may enter either your SSN or EIN.

If you are a single-member LLC that is disregarded as an entity separate from its owner, enter the owner's SSN (or EIN, if the owner has one). Do not enter the disregarded entity's EIN. If the LLC is classified as a corporation or partnership, enter the entity's EIN.

**Note:** See *What Name and Number To Give the Requester*, later, for further clarification of name and TIN combinations.

**How to get a TIN.** If you do not have a TIN, apply for one immediately. To apply for an SSN, get Form SS-5, Application for a Social Security Card, from your local SSA office or get this form online at [www.SSA.gov](http://www.SSA.gov). You may also get this form by calling 1-800-772-1213. Use Form W-7, Application for IRS Individual Taxpayer Identification Number, to apply for an ITIN, or Form SS-4, Application for Employer Identification Number, to apply for an EIN. You can apply for an EIN online by accessing the IRS website at [www.irs.gov/Businesses](http://www.irs.gov/Businesses) and clicking on Employer Identification Number (EIN) under Starting a Business. Go to [www.irs.gov/Forms](http://www.irs.gov/Forms) to view, download, or print Form W-7 and/or Form SS-4. Or, you can go to [www.irs.gov/OrderForms](http://www.irs.gov/OrderForms) to place an order and have Form W-7 and/or SS-4 mailed to you within 10 business days.

If you are asked to complete Form W-9 but do not have a TIN, apply for a TIN and write "Applied For" in the space for the TIN, sign and date the form, and give it to the requester. For interest and dividend payments, and certain payments made with respect to readily tradable instruments, generally you will have 60 days to get a TIN and give it to the requester before you are subject to backup withholding on payments. The 60-day rule does not apply to other types of payments. You will be subject to backup withholding on all such payments until you provide your TIN to the requester.

**Note:** Entering "Applied For" means that you have already applied for a TIN or that you intend to apply for one soon.

**Caution:** A disregarded U.S. entity that has a foreign owner must use the appropriate Form W-8.

## Part II. Certification

To establish to the withholding agent that you are a U.S. person, or resident alien, sign Form W-9. You may be requested to sign by the withholding agent even if item 1, 4, or 5 below indicates otherwise.

For a joint account, only the person whose TIN is shown in Part I should sign (when required). In the case of a disregarded entity, the person identified on line 1 must sign. Exempt payees, see *Exempt payee code*, earlier.

**Signature requirements.** Complete the certification as indicated in items 1 through 5 below.

**1. Interest, dividend, and barter exchange accounts opened before 1984 and broker accounts considered active during 1983.**

You must give your correct TIN, but you do not have to sign the certification.

**2. Interest, dividend, broker, and barter exchange accounts opened after 1983 and broker accounts considered inactive during 1983.**

You must sign the certification or backup withholding will apply. If you are subject to backup withholding and you are merely providing your correct TIN to the requester, you must cross out item 2 in the certification before signing the form.

**3. Real estate transactions.**

You must sign the certification. You may cross out item 2 of the certification.

**4. Other payments.** You must give your correct TIN, but you do not have to sign the certification unless you have been notified that you have previously given an incorrect TIN. "Other payments" include payments made in the course of the requester's trade or business for rents, royalties, goods (other than bills for merchandise), medical and health care services (including payments to corporations), payments to a nonemployee for services, payments made in settlement of payment card and third party network transactions, payments to certain fishing boat crew members and fishermen, and gross proceeds paid to attorneys (including payments to corporations).

**5. Mortgage interest paid by you, acquisition or abandonment of secured property, cancellation of debt, qualified tuition program payments (under section 529), ABLE accounts (under section 529A), IRA, Coverdell ESA, Archer MSA or HSA contributions or distributions, and pension distributions.** You must give your correct TIN, but you do not have to sign the certification.

**What Name and Number To Give the Requester**

For this type of account:	Give name and SSN of:
1. Individual	The individual
2. Two or more individuals (joint account) other than an account maintained by an FFI	The actual owner of the account or, if combined funds, the first individual on the account <sup>1</sup>
3. Two or more U.S. persons (joint account maintained by an FFI)	Each holder of the account
4. Custodial account of a minor (Uniform Gift to Minors Act)	The minor <sup>2</sup>
5. a. The usual revocable savings trust (grantor is also trustee)	The grantor-trustee <sup>1</sup>
b. So-called trust account that is not a legal or valid trust under state law	The actual owner <sup>1</sup>
6. Sole proprietorship or disregarded entity owned by an individual	The owner <sup>3</sup>
7. Grantor trust filing under Optional Form 1099 Filing Method 1 (see Regulations section 1.671-4(b)(2)(i)(A))	The grantor*
For this type of account:	Give name and EIN of:
8. Disregarded entity not owned by an individual	The owner
9. A valid trust, estate, or pension trust	Legal entity <sup>4</sup>
10. Corporation or LLC electing corporate status on Form 8832 or Form 2553	The corporation
11. Association, club, religious, charitable, educational, or other tax-exempt organization	The organization
12. Partnership or multi-member LLC	The partnership
13. A broker or registered nominee	The broker or nominee

For this type of account:	Give name and EIN of:
14. Account with the Department of Agriculture in the name of a public entity (such as a state or local government, school district, or prison) that receives agricultural program payments	The public entity
15. Grantor trust filing under the Form 1041 Filing Method or the Optional Form 1099 Filing Method 2 (see Regulations section 1.671-4(b)(2)(i)(B))	The trust

<sup>1</sup> List first and circle the name of the person whose number you furnish. If only one person on a joint account has an SSN, that person's number must be furnished.

<sup>2</sup> Circle the minor's name and furnish the minor's SSN.

<sup>3</sup> You must show your individual name and you may also enter your business or DBA name on the "Business name/disregarded entity" name line. You may use either your SSN or EIN (if you have one), but the IRS encourages you to use your SSN.

<sup>4</sup> List first and circle the name of the trust, estate, or pension trust. (Do not furnish the TIN of the personal representative or trustee unless the legal entity itself is not designated in the account title.) Also see *Special rules for partnerships*, earlier.

\*Note: The grantor also must provide a Form W-9 to trustee of trust.

Note: If no name is circled when more than one name is listed, the number will be considered to be that of the first name listed.

**Secure Your Tax Records From Identity Theft**

Identity theft occurs when someone uses your personal information such as your name, SSN, or other identifying information, without your permission, to commit fraud or other crimes. An identity thief may use your SSN to get a job or may file a tax return using your SSN to receive a refund.

To reduce your risk:

- Protect your SSN,
- Ensure your employer is protecting your SSN, and
- Be careful when choosing a tax preparer.

If your tax records are affected by identity theft and you receive a notice from the IRS, respond right away to the name and phone number printed on the IRS notice or letter.

If your tax records are not currently affected by identity theft but you think you are at risk due to a lost or stolen purse or wallet, questionable credit card activity or credit report, contact the IRS Identity Theft Hotline at 1-800-908-4490 or submit Form 14039.

For more information, see Pub. 5027, Identity Theft Information for Taxpayers.

Victims of identity theft who are experiencing economic harm or a systemic problem, or are seeking help in resolving tax problems that have not been resolved through normal channels, may be eligible for Taxpayer Advocate Service (TAS) assistance. You can reach TAS by calling the TAS toll-free case intake line at 1-877-777-4778 or TTY/TDD 1-800-829-4059.

**Protect yourself from suspicious emails or phishing schemes.**

Phishing is the creation and use of email and websites designed to mimic legitimate business emails and websites. The most common act is sending an email to a user falsely claiming to be an established legitimate enterprise in an attempt to scam the user into surrendering private information that will be used for identity theft.

The IRS does not initiate contacts with taxpayers via emails. Also, the IRS does not request personal detailed information through email or ask taxpayers for the PIN numbers, passwords, or similar secret access information for their credit card, bank, or other financial accounts.

If you receive an unsolicited email claiming to be from the IRS, forward this message to [phishing@irs.gov](mailto:phishing@irs.gov). You may also report misuse of the IRS name, logo, or other IRS property to the Treasury Inspector General for Tax Administration (TIGTA) at 1-800-366-4484. You can forward suspicious emails to the Federal Trade Commission at [spam@uce.gov](mailto:spam@uce.gov) or report them at [www.ftc.gov/complaint](http://www.ftc.gov/complaint). You can contact the FTC at [www.ftc.gov/idtheft](http://www.ftc.gov/idtheft) or 877-IDTHEFT (877-438-4338). If you have been the victim of identity theft, see [www.IdentityTheft.gov](http://www.IdentityTheft.gov) and Pub. 5027.

Visit [www.irs.gov/IdentityTheft](http://www.irs.gov/IdentityTheft) to learn more about identity theft and how to reduce your risk.

## Privacy Act Notice

Section 6109 of the Internal Revenue Code requires you to provide your correct TIN to persons (including federal agencies) who are required to file information returns with the IRS to report interest, dividends, or certain other income paid to you; mortgage interest you paid; the acquisition or abandonment of secured property; the cancellation of debt; or contributions you made to an IRA, Archer MSA, or HSA. The person collecting this form uses the information on the form to file information returns with the IRS, reporting the above information. Routine uses of this information include giving it to the Department of Justice for civil and criminal litigation and to cities, states, the District of Columbia, and U.S. commonwealths and possessions for use in administering their laws. The information also may be disclosed to other countries under a treaty, to federal and state agencies to enforce civil and criminal laws, or to federal law enforcement and intelligence agencies to combat terrorism. You must provide your TIN whether or not you are required to file a tax return. Under section 3406, payers must generally withhold a percentage of taxable interest, dividend, and certain other payments to a payee who does not give a TIN to the payer. Certain penalties may also apply for providing false or fraudulent information.

# CONFLICT OF INTEREST QUESTIONNAIRE

# FORM CIQ

For vendor or other person doing business with local governmental entity

This questionnaire reflects changes made to the law by H.B. 1491, 80th Leg., Regular Session.

This questionnaire is being filed in accordance with Chapter 176, Local Government Code by a person who has a business relationship as defined by Section 176.001 (1-a) with a local governmental entity and the person meets requirements under Section 176.006(a).

By law this questionnaire must be filed with the records administrator of the local governmental entity not later than the 7th business day after the date the person becomes aware of facts that require the statement to be filed. See Section 176.006, Local Government Code.

A person commits an offense if the person knowingly violates Section 176.006, Local Government Code. An offense under this section is a Class C misdemeanor.

OFFICE USE ONLY

Date Received

1 Name of person who has a business relationship with local governmental entity.

2  Check this box if you are filing an update to a previously filed questionnaire.

(The law requires that you file an updated completed questionnaire with the appropriate filing authority not later than the 7th business day after the date the originally filed questionnaire becomes incomplete or inaccurate.)

3 Name of local government officer with whom filer has employment or business relationship.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Name of Officer

This section (item 3 including subparts A, B, C & D) must be completed for each *officer* with whom the filer has an employment or other business relationship as defined by Section 176.001 (1-a), Local Government Code. Attach additional pages to this Form CIQ as necessary.

A. Is the local government officer named in this section receiving or likely to receive taxable income, other than investment income, from the filer of the questionnaire?

Yes

NO

B. Is the filer of the questionnaire receiving or likely to receive taxable income, other than investment income, from or at the direction of the local government *officer* named in this section AND the taxable income is not received from the local governmental entity?

Yes

NO

C. Is the filer of this questionnaire employed by a corporation or other business entity with respect to which the local government officer serves as an *officer* or director, or holds an ownership of 10 percent or more?

Yes

NO

D. Describe each employment or business relationship with the local government *officer* named in this section.

4

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature of person doing business with the governmental entity

\_\_\_\_\_  
Date

## **SPECIAL PROVISIONS FOR CONSTRUCTION**

### **1. Contract and Contract Documents**

The Plans, Specifications and Addenda, General Provisions shall form part of this contract and the provisions thereof shall be as binding upon the parties hereto as if they were herein fully set forth.

### **2. Definitions**

Whenever used in any of the contract Documents, the following meanings shall be given to the terms here in defined:

- (a) The term "Contract" means the Contract executed between the County of Galveston, hereinafter called the Owner, and \_\_\_\_\_, hereinafter called Contractor, of which these GENERAL CONDITIONS, form a part.
- (b) The term "Project Area" means the area within which are the specified Contract limits of the Improvements contemplated to be constructed in whole or in part under this contract.
- (c) The term "Engineer" means Raba Kistner, Inc., Engineer in charge, serving the Owner with architectural or engineering services, his successor, or any other person or persons, employed by the Owner for the purpose of directing or having in charge the work embraced in this Contract.
- (d) The term "Contract Documents" means and shall include the following: Invitation to Bid, , Signed Copy of Bid, General Conditions, Special Provisions For Construction, Acknowledgement and Certification Regarding Debarment, Non-Collusion Affidavit, Vendor Qualification Packet, Payment and Performance Bonds, Contract Award, Addenda (if any), Technical Specifications, and Drawings (as listed in the Schedule of Drawings).
- (e) The term "Substantially Complete" shall mean that the work is fully completed with the exception of minor miscellaneous work and adjustments.

### **3. Supervision By Contractor**

- (a) Except where the Contractor is an individual and gives his personal supervision to the work, the Contractor shall provide a competent superintendent, satisfactory to the Local Public Agency and the Engineer, on the work at all times during working hours with full authority to act for him. The Contractor shall also provide an adequate staff for the proper coordination and expediting of his work.
- (b) The Contractor shall lay out his own work and he shall be responsible for all work executed by him under the Contract. He shall verify all figures and elevations before proceeding with the work and will be held responsible for any error resulting from his failure to do so.

#### **4. Subcontracts**

- (a) The Contractor shall not execute an agreement with any subcontractor or permit any subcontractor to perform any work included in this contract until he has verified the subcontractor as eligible to participate in federally funded contracts.
- (b) No proposed subcontractor shall be disapproved by the city/county except for cause.
- (c) The Contractor shall be as fully responsible to the city/county for the acts and omissions of his subcontractors, and of persons either directly or indirectly employed by them.
- (d) The Contractor shall cause appropriate provisions to be inserted in all subcontracts relative to the work and required compliance by each subcontractor with the applicable provisions of the Contract.
- (e) Nothing contained in the Contract shall create any contractual relation between any subcontractor and the Owner.

#### **5. Fitting and Coordination of Work**

The Contractor shall be responsible for the proper fitting of all work and for the coordination of the operations of all trades, subcontractors, or material suppliers engaged upon this Contract.

#### **6. Payments to Contractor**

- (a) Partial Payments
  - 1) The Contractor shall prepare his requisition for partial payment as of the last day of the month and submit it, with the required number of copies, to the Engineer for his approval. The amount of the payment due the Contractor shall be determined by adding to the total value of work completed to date, the value of materials properly stored on the site and deducting (1) Five percent (5%) of the total amount, to be retained until final payment and (2) the amount of all previous payments. The total value of work completed to date shall be based on the estimated quantities of work completed and on the unit prices contained in the agreement. The value of materials properly stored on the site shall be based upon the estimated quantities of such materials and the invoice prices. Copies of all invoices shall be available for inspection of the Engineer.
  - 2) Monthly or partial payments made by the Owner to the Contractor are moneys advanced for the purpose of assisting the contractor to expedite the work of construction. The Contractor shall be responsible for the care and protection of all materials and work upon which payments have been made until final acceptance of such work and materials by the Owner. Such payments shall not constitute a waiver of the right of the Owner to require the fulfillment of all terms of the Contract and the delivery of all improvements embraced in this Contract complete and satisfactory to the Owner in all details.
- (b) Final Payment

- 1) After final inspection and acceptance by the Owner of all work under the Contract, the Contractor shall prepare his requisition for final payment which shall be based upon the careful inspection of each item of work at the applicable unit prices stipulated in the Agreement. The total amount of the final payment due the Contractor under this contract shall be the amount computed as described above less all previous payments.
- 2) The Owner before paying the final estimate, shall require the Contractor to furnish releases or receipts from all subcontractors having performed any work and all persons having supplied materials, equipment (installed on the Project) and services to the Contractor, if the Owner deems it necessary in order to protect its interest. The Owner may, if it deems such action advisable, make payment in part or in full to the Contractor without requiring the furnishing of such releases or receipts and any payments made shall in no way impair the obligations of any surety or sureties furnished under this Contract.
- 3) Any amount due the Owner under Liquidated Damages shall be deducted from the final payment due the contractor.

(c) Payments Subject to Submission of Certificates

Each payment to the Contractor by the Owner shall be made subject to submission by the Contractor of all written certifications required of him and his subcontractors.

(d) Withholding Payments

The Owner may withhold from any payment due the Contractor whatever is deemed necessary to protect the Owner, and if so elects, may also withhold any amounts due from the Contractor to any subcontractors or material dealers, for work performed or material furnished by them. The foregoing provisions shall be construed solely for the benefit of the Owner and will not require the Owner to determine or adjust any claims or disputes between the Contractor and his subcontractors or material dealers, or to withhold any moneys for their protection unless the Owner elects to do so. The failure or refusal of the Owner to withhold any moneys from the Contractor shall in no way impair the obligations of any surety or sureties under any bond or bonds furnished under this Contract.

**7. Changes in the Work**

- (a) The Owner may make changes in the scope of work required to be performed by the Contractor under the Contract without relieving or releasing the Contractor from any of his obligations under the Contract or any guarantee given by him pursuant to the Contract provisions, and without affecting the validity of the guaranty bonds, and without relieving or releasing the surety or sureties of said bonds. All such work shall be executed under the terms of the original Contract unless it is expressly provided otherwise.
- (b) Except for the purpose of affording protection against any emergency endangering health, life, limb or property, the Contractor shall make no change in the materials used or in the specified manner of constructing and/or installing the improvements or supply additional labor, services or materials beyond that actually required for the execution of the Contract, unless in pursuance



of a written order from the Owner authorizing the Contractor to proceed with the change. No claim for an adjustment of the Contract Price will be valid unless so ordered.

- (c) If applicable unit prices are contained in the Agreement, the Owner may order the Contractor to proceed with desired unit prices specified in the Contract; provided that in case of a unit price contract the net value of all changes does not increase the original total amount of the agreement by more than twenty-five percent (25%) or decrease the original the total amount by eighteen percent (18%).
- (d) Each change order shall include in its final form:
  - 1) A detailed description of the change in the work.
  - 2) The Contractor's proposal (if any) or a confirmed copy thereof.
  - 3) A definite statement as to the resulting change in the contract price and/or time.
  - 4) The statement that all work involved in the change shall be performed in accordance with contract requirements except as modified by the change order.
  - 5) The procedures as outlined in this Section for a unit price contract also apply in any lump sum contract.

**8. Estimated Quantities**

This Contract, including the specifications, plans and estimates, is intended to show clearly all the work to be done and material to be furnished hereunder. The estimated quantities of the various classes of work to be done and material to be furnished under this contract are approximate and are to be used as a basis for estimating the probable cost of the work and for comparing the proposals offered for the work. It is understood and agreed that the actual amount of work to be done and material to be furnished under this contract may differ somewhat from these estimates, and that the basis for payment under this contract shall be the plan quantity or actual amount of such work done whichever is specified. It is further understood that the County does not guarantee any minimum amount of work under this Contract.

Contractor agrees that it will make no claim for damages, anticipated profits or otherwise on account of any differences which may be found between the quantities of work actually done, the material actually furnished under this Contract and the estimated quantities contemplated and contained in the proposals.

**9. Claims for Extra Cost**

- (a) If the Contractor claims that any instructions by Drawings or otherwise involve extra cost or extension of time, he shall, within ten days after the receipt of such instructions, and in any event before proceeding to execute the work, submit his protest thereto in writing to the Owner, stating clearly and in detail the basis of his objections. No such claim will be considered unless so made.

- (b) Claims for additional compensation for extra work, due to alleged errors in ground elevations, contour lines, or bench marks, will not be recognized unless accompanied by certified survey data, made prior to the time the original ground was disturbed, clearly showing that errors exist which resulted, or would result, in handling more material, or performing more work, than would be reasonably estimated from the Drawings and maps issued.
- (c) Any discrepancies which may be discovered between actual conditions and those represented by the Drawings and maps shall be reported at once to the Owner and work shall not proceed except at the Contractor's risk, until written instructions have been received by him from the Owner.
- (d) If, on the basis of the available evidence, the Owner determines that an adjustment of the Contract Price and/or time is justifiable, a change order shall be executed.

**10. Time**

The Contractor is advised that time for completion will consist of the number of calendar days set out in the Contract Award. The time for completion will begin to run on the day after the issuance of a notice to proceed by the County. The Contractor is required to start work no later than ten (10) working days after the issuance of the written notice to proceed. Failure to timely commence operations may be deemed by the County to be a default. The Contractor will complete the work at that site within the time period specified. If there is more than one site listed on the notice to proceed, work for all sites must be completed not later than is specified for each site.

**11. Termination, Delays, and Liquidated Damages**

- (a) Right of the Owner to Terminate Contract.

In the event that any of the provisions of this contract are violated by the Contractor, or by any of his subcontractors, the Owner may serve written notice upon the Contractor and the Surety of its intention to terminate the contract. The notices shall contain the reasons for such intention to terminate the contract, and unless such violation or delay shall cease and satisfactory arrangement of correction be made within ten days, the contract shall, upon the expiration of said ten (10) days, cease and terminate. In the event of any such termination, the Owner shall immediately serve notice thereof upon the Surety and the Contractor. The Surety shall have the right to take over and perform the contract. Provided, however, that if the Surety does not commence performance thereof within ten (10) days from the date of the mailing to such Surety of notice of termination, the Owner may take over the work and complete the project by bid/contract or by force account at the expense of the Contractor and his Surety shall be liable to the Owner for any excess cost incurred. In such event the Owner may take possession of and utilize in completing the work, such materials, appliances, and plant as may be on the site of the work and necessary therefore.

- (b) Liquidated Damages for Delays.

Contractor agrees that time is of the essence of this contract and that for each day of a delay of a day beyond the number of working days or calendar days herein agreed upon the completion of the work herein specified and contracted for (after due allowance for such extension of time as is provided for under Extension of Time hereinabove) County may withhold permanently from

Contractor's total compensation the sum of \$1,000.00 for each calendar day of delay, until the work is completed, as liquidated damages for such delay. The Contractor and his sureties shall be liable to the Owner for the amount thereof.

(c) Excusable Delays.

- 1) The right of the Contractor to proceed shall not be terminated nor shall the Contractor be charged with liquidated damages for any delays in the completion of the work due to:
  - a. Any acts of the Government, including controls or restrictions upon or requisitioning of materials, equipment, tools, or labor by reason of war, national defense, or any other national emergency;
  - b. Any acts of the Owner;
  - c. Causes not reasonably foreseeable by the parties to this Contract at the time of the execution of the Contract which are beyond the control and without the fault or negligence of the Contractor, including, but not restricted to, acts of God or of the public enemy, acts of another Contractor in the performance of some other contract with the Owner, fires, floods, epidemics, quarantine, restrictions, strikes, freight embargoes, and weather of unusual severity such as hurricanes, tornadoes, cyclones and other extreme weather conditions.
- 2) Provided, however, that the Contractor promptly notifies the Owner within ten (10) days in writing of the cause of the delay. Upon receipt of such notification, the Owner shall ascertain the facts and the cause and extent of delay. If, upon the basis of the facts and the terms of this contract, the delay is properly excusable, the Owner shall extend the time for completing the work for a period of time commensurate with the period of excusable delay.

**12. Assignment or Novation**

The Contractor shall not assign or transfer, whether by an assignment or novation, any of its rights, duties, benefits, obligations, liabilities, or responsibilities under this Contract without the written consent of the Owner; provided, however, that assignments to banks or other financial institutions may be made without the consent of the Owner. No assignment or novation of this Contract shall be valid unless the assignment or novation expressly provides that the assignment of any of the Contractor's rights or benefits under the Contract is subject to a prior lien for labor performed, services rendered, and materials, tools, and equipment supplied for the performance of the work under this Contract in favor of all persons, firms, or corporations rendering such labor or services or supplying such materials, tools, or equipment.

**13. Disputes**

- (a) All disputes arising under this Contract or its interpretation except those disputes covered by FEDERAL LABOR STANDARDS PROVISIONS whether involving law or fact or both, or extra work, and all claims for alleged breach of contract shall, within ten (10) days of commencement of the dispute, be presented by the Contractor to the Owner for decision. Any claim not presented within the time limit specified in this paragraph shall be deemed to have been waived, except that if the claim is of a continuing character and notice of the claim is not given within ten (10)

days of its commencement, the claim will be considered only for a period commencing ten (10) days prior to the receipt of the Owner.

- (b) The Contractor shall submit in detail his claim and his proof thereof.
- (c) If the Contractor does not agree with any decision of the Owner, he shall in no case allow the dispute to delay the work but shall notify the Owner promptly that he is proceeding with the work under protest.

#### **14. Technical Specifications and Drawings**

Anything mentioned in the Technical Specifications and not shown on the Drawings, or vice versa, shall be of like effect as if shown on or mentioned in both. In case of difference between Drawings and Technical Specifications, the Technical Specifications shall govern. In case of any discrepancy in Drawings, or Technical Specifications, the matter shall be immediately submitted to the Owner, without whose decision, said discrepancy shall not be adjusted by the Contractor, save only at his own risk and expense.

#### **15. Shop Drawings**

- (a) All required shop drawings, machinery details, layout drawings, etc. shall be submitted to the Engineer in copies for approval sufficiently in advance of requirements to afford ample time for checking, including time for correcting, resubmitting and rechecking if necessary. The Contractor may proceed, only at his own risk, with manufacture or installation of any equipment or work covered by said shop drawings, etc. until they are approved and no claim, by the Contractor, for extension of the contract time shall be granted by reason of his failure in this respect.
- (b) Any drawings submitted without the Contractor's stamp of approval will not be considered and will be returned to him for proper resubmission. If any drawings show variations from the requirements of the Contract because of standard shop practice or other reason, the Contractor shall make specific mention of such variation in his letter of transmittal in order that, if acceptable, suitable action may be taken for proper adjustment of contract price and/or time, otherwise the Contractor will not be relieved of the responsibility for executing the work in accordance with the Contract even though the drawings have been approved.
- (c) If a shop drawing is in accordance with the contract or involves only a minor adjustment in the interest of the owner not involving a change in contract price or time; the engineer may approve the drawing. The approval shall not relieve the Contractor from his responsibility for adherence to the contract or for any error in the drawing.

#### **16. Requests for Supplementary Information**

It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to make timely requests of the Owner for any additional information not already in his possession which should be furnished by the Owner under the terms of this Contract, and which he will require in the planning and execution of the work. Such requests may be submitted from time to time as the need approaches, but each shall be filed in ample time to permit appropriate action to be taken by all parties involved so as to avoid delay. Each request shall be in writing, and list the various items and the latest date by which each will be

required by the Contractor. The first list shall be submitted within two weeks after Contract award and shall be as complete as possible at that time. The Contractor shall, if requested, furnish promptly any assistance and information the Engineer may require in responding to these requests of the Contractor. The Contractor shall be fully responsible for any delay in his work or to others arising from his failure to comply fully with the provision of this section.

#### **17. Materials and Workmanship**

- (a) Unless otherwise specifically provided for in the technical specifications, all workmanship, equipment, materials and articles incorporated in the work shall be new and the best grade of the respective kinds for the purpose. Where equipment, materials, articles or workmanship are referred to in the technical specifications as "equal to" any particular standard, the Engineer shall decide the question of equality.
- (b) The Contractor shall furnish to the Owner for approval the manufacturer's detailed specifications for all machinery, mechanical and other special equipment, which he contemplates installing together with full information as to type, performance characteristics, and all other pertinent information as required, and shall likewise submit for approval full information concerning all other materials or articles which he proposes to incorporate.
- (c) Machinery, mechanical and other equipment, materials or articles installed or used without such prior approval shall be at the risk of subsequent rejection.
- (d) Materials specified by reference to the number or symbol of a specific standard, shall comply with requirements in the latest revision thereof and any amendment or supplement thereto in effect on the date of the Invitation for Bids, except as limited to type, class or grade, or modified in the technical specifications shall have full force and effect as though printed therein.
- (e) The Owner may require the Contractor to dismiss from the work such employee or employees as the Owner or the Engineer may deem incompetent, or careless, or insubordinate.

#### **18. Samples, Certificates and Tests**

- (a) The Contractor shall submit all material or equipment samples, certificates, affidavits, etc., as called for in the contract documents or required by the Engineer, promptly after award of the contract and acceptance of the Contractor's bond. No such material or equipment shall be manufactured or delivered to the site, except at the Contractor's own risk, until the required samples or certificates have been approved in writing by the Engineer. Any delay in the work caused by late or improper submission of samples or certificates for approval shall not be considered just cause for an extension of the contract time.
- (b) Each sample submitted by the Contractor shall carry a label giving the name of the Contractor, the project for which it is intended, and the name of the producer. The accompanying certificate or letter from the Contractor shall state that the sample complies with contract requirements, shall give the name and brand of the product, its place of origin, the name and address of the producer and all specifications or other detailed information which will assist the Engineer in making a prompt decision regarding the acceptability of the sample. It shall also include the

statement that all materials or equipment furnished for use in the project will comply with the samples and/or certified statements.

- (c) Approval of any materials shall be general only and shall not constitute a waiver of the Owner's right to demand full compliance with Contract requirements. After actual deliveries, the Engineer will have such check tests made as he deems necessary in each instance and may reject materials and equipment and accessories for cause, even though such materials and articles have been given general approval. If materials, equipment or accessories which fail to meet check tests have been incorporated in the work, the Engineer will have the right to cause their removal and replacement by proper materials or to demand and secure such reparation by the Contractor as is equitable.
- (d) Except as otherwise specifically stated in the Contract, the costs of sampling and testing will be divided as follows:
  - 1) The Contractor shall furnish without extra cost, including packing and delivery charges, all samples required for testing purposes, except those samples taken on the project by the Engineer;
  - 2) The Contractor shall assume all costs of re-testing materials which fail to meet contract requirements;
  - 3) The Contractor shall assume all costs of testing materials offered in substitution for those found deficient;
  - 4) The Owner will pay all other expenses.

**19. Permits and Codes**

- (a) The Contractor shall give all notices required by and comply with all applicable laws, ordinances, and codes of the Local Government. All construction work and/or utility installations shall comply with all applicable ordinances, and codes including all written waivers. Before installing any work, the Contractor shall examine the drawings and technical specifications for compliance with applicable ordinances and codes and shall immediately report any discrepancy to the Owner. Where the requirements of the drawings and technical specifications fail to comply with such applicable ordinances or codes, the Owner will adjust the Contract by Change Order to conform to such ordinances or codes (unless waivers in writing covering the difference have been granted by the governing body or department) and make appropriate adjustment in the Contract Price or stipulated unit prices.
- (b) Should the Contractor fail to observe the foregoing provisions and proceed with the construction and/or install any utility at variance with any applicable ordinance or code, including any written waivers (notwithstanding the fact that such installation is in compliance with the drawings and technical specifications), the Contractor shall remove such work without cost to the Owner.
- (c) The Contractor shall at his own expense, secure and pay for all permits for street pavement, sidewalks, shed, removal of abandoned water taps, sealing of house connection drains,

pavement cuts, buildings, electrical, plumbing, water, gas and sewer permits required by the local regulatory body or any of its agencies.

- (d) The Contractor shall comply with applicable local laws and ordinances governing the disposal of surplus excavation, materials, debris and rubbish on or off the Project Area and commit no trespass on any public or private property in any operation due to or connected with the Improvements contained in this Contract.
- (e) The Contractor will be required to make arrangements for and pay the water, electrical power, or any other utilities required during construction.
- (f) During construction of this project, the Contractor shall use every means possible to control the amount of dust created by construction. Prior to the close of a day's work, the Contractor, if directed by the Owner, shall moisten the bank and surrounding area to prevent a dusty condition.

**20. Care of Work**

- (a) The Contractor shall be responsible for all damages to person or property that occur as a result of his fault or negligence in connection with the prosecution of the work and shall be responsible for the proper care and protection of all materials delivered and work performed until completion and final acceptance.
- (b) The Contractor shall provide sufficient competent watchmen, both day and night, including Saturdays, Sundays, and holidays, from the time the work is commenced until final completion and acceptance.
- (c) In an emergency affecting the safety of life, limb or property, including adjoining property, the Contractor, without special instructions or authorization from the Owner is authorized to act at his discretion to prevent such threatened loss or injury, and he shall so act. He shall likewise act if instructed to do so by the Owner.
- (d) The Contractor shall avoid damage as a result of his operations to existing sidewalks, streets, curbs, pavements, utilities (except those which are to be replaced or removed), adjoining property, etc., and he shall at his own expense completely repair any damage thereto caused by his operations.
- (e) The Contractor shall shore up, brace, underpin, secure, and protect as maybe necessary, all foundations and other parts of existing structures adjacent to, adjoining, and in the vicinity of the site, which may be in any way affected by the excavations or other operations connected with the construction of the improvements included in this Contract.
- (f) The Contractor shall be responsible for the giving of any and all required notices to any adjoining or adjacent property owner or other party before the commencement of any work. The Contractor shall indemnify and save harmless the Owner from any damages on account of settlements or the loss of lateral support of adjoining property and from all loss or expense and all damages for which the Owner may become liable in consequence of such injury or damage to adjoining and adjacent structures and their premises.

## **21. Accident Prevention**

- (a) No laborer or mechanic employed in the performance of this Contract shall be required to work in surroundings or under working conditions which are unsanitary, hazardous, or dangerous to his health or safety as determined under construction safety and health standards promulgated by the Secretary of Labor.
- (b) The Contractor shall exercise proper precaution at all times for the protection of persons and property and shall be responsible for all damages to persons or property, either on or off the site, which occur as a result of his prosecution of the work.
- (c) The Contractor shall maintain an accurate record of all cases of death, occupational disease, or injury requiring medical attention or causing loss of time from work, arising out of and in the course of employment on work under the Contract. The Contractor shall promptly furnish the Owner with reports concerning these matters.
- (d) The Contractor shall indemnify and save harmless the Owner from any claims for damages resulting from property damage, personal injury and/or death suffered or alleged to have been suffered by any person as a result of any work conducted under this contract.
- (e) The Contractor shall provide trench safety for all excavations more than five feet deep prior to excavation. All OSHA Standards for trench safety must be adhered to by the Contractor.
- (f) The contractor shall at all times conduct his work in such a manner as to insure the least possible inconvenience to vehicular and pedestrian traffic. At the close of the work each day, all streets where possible in the opinion of the Owner, shall be opened to the public in order that persons living in the area may have access to their homes or businesses by the use of the streets. Barricades, warning signs, and necessary lighting shall be provided to the satisfaction of the Owner at the expense of the Contractor.

## **22. Sanitary Facilities**

The Contractor shall furnish, install and maintain ample sanitary facilities for the workmen. As the needs arise, a sufficient number of enclosed temporary toilets shall be conveniently placed as required. Drinking water shall be provided from an approved source, so piped or transported as to keep it safe and fresh and served from single service containers or satisfactory types of sanitary drinking stands or fountains. All such facilities and services shall be furnished in strict accordance with existing and governing health regulations.

## **23. Use of Premises**

- (a) The Contractor shall confine his equipment, storage of materials, and construction operations to the contract limits as shown on the drawings and as prescribed by ordinances or permits, or as may be desired by the Owner, and shall not unreasonably encumber the site or public rights of way with his materials and construction equipment.



- (b) The Contractor shall comply with all reasonable instructions of the Owner and all existing state and local regulations regarding signs, advertising, traffic, fires, explosives, danger signals, and barricades.

**24. Removal of Debris, Cleaning, Etc.**

The Contractor shall, periodically or as directed during the progress of the work, remove and legally dispose of all surplus excavated material and debris, and keep the Project Area and public rights of way reasonably clear. Upon completion of the work, he shall remove all temporary construction facilities, debris and unused materials provided for work, and put the whole site of the work and public rights of way in a neat and clean condition.

**25. Inspection**

- (a) All materials and workmanship shall be subject to inspection, examination, or test by the Owner and Engineer at any and all times during manufacture or construction and at any and all places where such manufacture or construction occurs. The Owner shall have the right to reject defective material and workmanship or require its correction. Unacceptable workmanship shall be satisfactorily corrected. Rejected material shall be promptly segregated and removed from the Project Area and replaced with material of specified quality without charge. If the Contractor fails to proceed at once with the correction of rejected workmanship or defective material, the Owner may by contract or otherwise have the defects remedied or rejected materials removed from the Project Area and charge the cost of the same against any Monies which may be due the Contractor, without prejudice to any other rights or remedies of the Owner.
- (b) The Contractor shall furnish promptly all materials reasonably necessary for any tests which may be required. All tests by the Owner will be performed in such manner as not to delay the work unnecessarily and will be made in accordance with the provisions of the technical specifications.
- (c) The Contractor shall notify the Owner sufficiently in advance of back filling or concealing any facilities to permit proper inspection. If any facilities are concealed without approval or consent of the Owner, the Contractor shall uncover for inspection and recover such facilities at his own expense, when so requested by the Owner.
- (d) Should it be considered necessary or advisable by the Owner at any time before final acceptance of the entire work to make an examination of work already completed by uncovering the same, the Contractor shall on request promptly furnish all necessary facilities, labor, and material. If such work is found to be defective in any important or essential respect, due to fault of the Contractor or his subcontractors, the Contractor shall defray all the expenses of such examination and of satisfactory reconstruction. If, however, such work is found to meet the requirements of the Contract, the actual cost of labor and material necessarily involved in the examination and replacement, shall be allowed the Contractor and he shall, in addition, if completion of the work of the entire Contract has been delayed thereby, be granted a suitable extension of time on account of the additional work involved.
- (e) Inspection of materials and appurtenances to be incorporated in the improvements included in this Contract may be made at the place of production, manufacture or shipment, whenever the quantity justifies it, and such inspection and acceptance, unless otherwise stated in the technical

specifications, shall be final, except as regards (1) latent defects, (2) departures from specific requirements of the Contract, (3) damage or loss in transit, or (4) fraud or such gross mistakes as amount to fraud. Subject to the requirements contained in the preceding sentence, the inspection of materials as a whole or in part will be made at the Project Site.

- (f) Neither inspection, testing, approval nor acceptance of the work in whole or in part, by the Owner or its agents shall relieve the Contractor or his sureties of full responsibility for materials furnished or work performed not in strict accordance with the Contract.

**26. Review by Owner**

The Owner and its authorized representatives and agents shall have access to and be permitted to observe and review all work, materials, equipment, payrolls, personnel records, employment conditions, material invoices, and other relevant data and records pertaining to this Contract, provided, however that all instructions and approval with respect to the work will be given to the Contractor only by the Owner through its authorized representatives or agents.

**27. Final Inspection**

When the Improvements included in this Contract are substantially completed, the Contractor shall notify the Owner in writing that the work will be ready for final inspection on a definite date which shall be stated in the notice. The Owner will make the arrangements necessary to have final inspection commenced on the date stated in the notice, or as soon thereafter as is practicable.

**28. Deduction for Uncorrected Work**

If the Owner deems it not expedient to require the Contractor to correct work not done in accordance with the Contract Documents, an equitable deduction from the Contract Price will be made by agreement between the Contractor and the Owner and subject to settlement, in case of dispute, as herein provided.

**29. Warranty of Title**

No material, supplies, or equipment to be installed or furnished under this Contract shall be purchased subject to any chattel mortgage or under a conditional sale, lease-purchase or other agreement by which an interest is retained by the seller or supplier. The Contractor shall warrant good title to all materials, supplies, and equipment installed or incorporated in the work and upon completion of all work, shall deliver the same together with all improvements and appurtenances constructed or placed by him to the Owner free from any claims, liens, or charges. Neither the Contractor nor any person, firm, or corporation furnishing any material or labor for any work covered by this Contract shall have any right to a lien upon any improvement or appurtenance. Nothing contained in this paragraph, however, shall defeat or impair the right of persons furnishing materials or labor to recover under any law permitting such persons to look to funds due the Contractor in the hands of the Owner. The provisions of this paragraph shall be inserted in all subcontracts and material contracts and notice of its provisions shall be given to all persons furnishing materials for the work when no formal contract is entered into for such materials.

**30. Warranty of Workmanship and Materials**

Neither the final certificate of payment nor any provision in the Contract nor partial or entire use of the improvements included in this Contract by the Owner or the public shall constitute an acceptance of work not done in accordance with the Contract or relieve the Contractor of liability in respect to any express warranties or responsibility for faulty materials or workmanship. The Contractor shall promptly remedy any defects in the work and pay for any damage to other work resulting therefrom which shall appear within a period of 12 months from the date of final acceptance of the work.

**31. Job Offices**

- (a) The Contractor and his subcontractors may maintain such office and storage facilities on the site as are necessary for the proper conduct of the work. These shall be located so as to cause no interference to any work to be performed on the site. The Owner shall be consulted with regard to locations.
- (b) Upon completion of the improvements, or as directed by the Owner, the Contractors shall remove all such temporary structures and facilities from the site, and leave the site of the work in the condition required by the contract.

**32. Partial Use of Site Improvements**

The Owner may give notice to the Contractor and place in use those sections of the improvements which have been completed, inspected and can be accepted as complying with the technical specifications and if in its opinion, each such section is reasonably safe, fit, and convenient for the use and accommodation for which it was intended, provided:

- (a) The use of such sections of the Improvements shall in no way impede the completion of the remainder of the work by the Contractor.
- (b) The Contractor shall not be responsible for any damages or maintenance costs due directly to the use of such sections.
- (c) The period of guarantee stipulated in the Section 29 hereof shall not begin to run until the date of the final acceptance of all work which the Contractor is required to construct under this Contract.

**33. Contract Period**

The work to be performed under this contract shall commence within the time stipulated by the Owner in the Notice to Proceed, and shall be fully completed within 75 calendar days thereafter.

**34. Keeping Of Plans And Specifications Accessible**

The Contractor shall keep one (1) copy of all Plans and Specifications constantly accessible at the work site and available for inspection at all times.

**35. Utilities**

Contractor shall be responsible for any charges which may be made by any city or utility companies

for the work to be performed by Contractor.

**36. Parking**

Contractor shall be responsible for the expense of parking the Contractor's vehicle(s) in a legal manner and at no expense or inconvenience to the County.

**37. Fire And Safety**

Contractor is completely responsible for fire protection at the job site as well as the safety of its own employees as well as those entering onto the job site.

**38. Contractor's Buildings**

The building of structures for housing men, or the erection of tents or other forms of protection will be permitted only at such places as the County shall permit, and the sanitary conditions of the grounds in or about such structures shall at all times be maintained in the manner satisfactory to the County.

**39. Worksite Security**

Contractor shall maintain the security of the worksite.

Contractor shall provide adequate protection to persons on the worksite, adjacent properties, and utilities as is necessary to keep each free of damage or injury. Contractor shall furnish all barricades, warning lights and other safety devices necessary for the safety and protection of the public and shall remove them upon completion of the work performed on those premises under the terms of this contract.

Contractor will have complete control over the work site and shall be fully responsible for any loss of or damage to any County property from any cause and will reimburse County in the event of any loss or damage to County's property from any cause.

Contractor shall take proper means to protect adjacent or adjoining properties which might be injured or seriously affected by construction undertaken under this Agreement from any damage or injury by reason of said process of construction. Contractor shall be liable for any and all claims for such damage on account of its failure to fully protect all adjoining properties.

**40. Final Grading**

If grading is required, when work is complete, Contractor shall grade the site to fill in holes and make a presentable appearance without disturbing trees and add fill dirt if needed. Contractor may not leave voids in the grading and compaction of the property. The land shall have a smooth appearance without concrete, bricks, building materials, and other debris on the surface.

**41. Changes And Alterations**

Contractor further agrees that County may make such changes and alterations as County may see fit, in the line, grade, form dimensions, plans or materials for the work herein contemplated, or any part thereof, either before or after the beginning of the contract construction, without affecting the validity of this Contract and the accompanying bonds.

If such changes or alterations diminish the quantity of the work to be done, they shall not constitute the basis for a claim for damages, or anticipated profits on the work that may be dispensed with. If they increase the amount of the work, and the increased work can fairly be classified under the specifications, such increase shall be paid for according to the quantity actually done and at the unit price established for such work under this contract; otherwise such additional work shall be paid for as provided under the paragraph entitled "EXTRA WORK". In case the County shall make such changes or alterations as shall make useless any work already done or material already furnished or used in said work, then County shall recompense Contractor for any material or labor so used, and for any actual loss occasioned by such change due to actual expenses incurred in preparation for the work as originally planned.

#### **42. Extra Work**

The term "Extra Work" as used in this contract shall be understood to mean and include all work that may be required by the County to be done by Contractor to accomplish any change, alteration or addition to the work shown in the plans and specifications.

It is agreed that Contractor shall perform all Extra Work under the direction of the County when presented with a Written Work Order signed by the County. It is also agreed that the compensation to be paid Contractor for performing said Extra Work shall be determined by one or more of the following methods:

Method (a) - By agreed unit prices; or

Method (b) - By agreed lump sum: or

Method (c) - If Neither Method (a) nor Method (b) can be agreed upon before the Extra Work is commenced, then Contractor shall be paid the "Actual field cost" of the work plus fifteen (15) percent.

In the event said Extra Work be performed and paid for under Method (c), then the provisions of this paragraph shall apply and the "actual field cost" is hereby defined to include the cost of all workmen, such as foremen, timekeepers, merchants, and laborers, and materials, supplies, teams, trucks, rentals on machinery and equipment for time actually employed or used on such Extra Work plus actual transportation charges necessarily incurred, if the kind of equipment or machinery is not already on the job, together with all power, fuel, lubricants, water and similar operating expenses, also all necessary incidental expenses incurred directly on account of such Extra Work including Social Security, Old Age Benefits and other payroll taxes, and a ratable proportion of premiums on Construction and Maintenance Bonds, Public Liability and Property Damage and Workmen's Compensation, and all other insurance as may be required by any law or ordinance. The County may direct the form in which accounts of the "actual field cost" shall be kept and may also specify in writing, before the work commences, the method of doing the work and the type and kind of machinery and equipment to be used, otherwise these matters shall be determined by Contractor. Unless otherwise agreed upon, the prices for the use of machinery and equipment shall be determined by using the one hundred (100) percent of the actual hourly or daily rate (for the time used plus time in moving to and from Job) of the latest schedule of Equipment Ownership Expense adopted by the Association General Contractors of America. Where practicable the terms and prices for the use of Machinery and Equipment shall be incorporated in the Written Extra Work Order. The fifteen (15) percent of the "Actual Field Cost" to be paid Contractor shall cover and compensate him for his profit, overhead, general superintendence and field office expense, and all other elements of cost and expense not embraced within the "actual field cost" as herein defined, save that where the Contractor's Camp or Field Office must be maintained primarily on account of such extra work, then the cost to maintain and operate same shall be included in the "actual field cost".

No claim for extra work of any kind will be allowed unless ordered in writing by the County. In case any orders or instructions, either oral or written appear to Contractor to involve extra work for which he should receive compensation, it shall make written request to the County for written order authorizing Extra Work. Should a difference of opinion arise as to what does or does not constitute extra work, or as to the payment therefor, and the County insists upon its performance, Contractor shall proceed with the work after making written order and shall keep an accurate account of the "actual field cost" thereof, as provided under Method (c) and by this action Contractor will thereby preserve the right to submit the matter of payment to litigation.

**43. Salvage**

Any materials, equipment and fixtures specifically ordered to be salvaged under these specifications shall remain the property of County and will be delivered to the site designated by the County. All other items shall be disposed of by Contractor in compliance with all applicable laws and regulations.

**44. Compliance With Codes**

Contractor shall comply with all city, county, and state codes, laws, and ordinances in force at the time of award of contract and applicable to such work. Contractor shall obtain, at Contractor's own expense such permits, certificates, and licenses as may be required in the performance of the specified work.

**45. Laws And Ordinances**

Contractor shall at all times observe and comply with all Federal, State and Local Laws, ordinances and regulations which in any manner effect the contract or the work, and shall indemnify and save harmless the County against any claim arising from the violation of any such laws and ordinances, whether by Contractor or its employees.

**46. Permits And Licenses**

Contractor shall be responsible for obtaining and furnishing all necessary permits and licenses, City, County, State or Federal as are required for the performance of this contract.

**47. Lines And Grades**

The Engineer will furnish points for horizontal and vertical control. Any additional stakes required by the Contractor shall be set at his expense. Whenever necessary, work shall be suspended to permit this work, but such suspension will be as brief as practicable and the Contractor shall be allowed no extra compensation therefor. The Contractor shall give the Engineer ample notice of the time and place where control lines and bench marks will be needed. All control stakes, marks, etc. shall be carefully preserved by the Contractor, and in case of careless destruction or removal by him or his employees, such control stakes, marks, etc. shall be replaced by the Engineer at the Contractor's expense.

**48. Excess, Waste Material And Debris**

All excess material, waste material and debris shall become the property of the Contractor and shall be properly disposed of off-site. No separate payment shall be made for same.

**49. Material Hauling**

Hauling of materials will not be paid for directly, but shall be considered as subsidiary work pertaining to the respective bid items. Haul routes for full and empty loads shall be restricted to State Highways. Hauling of equipment is also restricted to State Highways.

**50. Abatement And Mitigation Of Excessive Or Unnecessary Construction Noise**

Throughout all phases of the construction of this project, including the moving, unloading, operating and handling of construction equipment prior to commencement of work, during the project and after the work is complete, the contractor shall make every reasonable effort to minimize the noise imposed upon the immediate neighborhood surrounding the area of construction. Particular and special efforts shall be exercised by the Contractor to avoid the creation of unnecessary noise impacts on adjacent sensitive receptors in the placement of non-mobile equipment such as air compressors, generators, pumps, etc. The placement of temporary parked mobile equipment with the engine running shall be such as to cause the least disruption of normal adjacent activities not associated with the work to be performed by the contractor.

All equipment associated with the work shall be equipped with components designed by the manufacturer wholly or in part to suppress excessive noise and these components shall be maintained in their original operating condition considering normal depreciation. Noise-attenuation devices installed by the manufacturer such as mufflers, engine covers, insulation, etc., shall not be removed nor rendered ineffectual nor be permitted to remain off the equipment while the equipment is in use.

**51. Working Hours**

Work shall not be commenced by the contractor before sunrise and shall be so conducted that all equipment is off the road and safely stored by sunset. Specific permission shall be obtained by the contractor from the Engineer for work during those hours between 7:00 P.M. and 6:00 A.M. of the following day.

**52. Pipeline, Utility Locations And Contractor Responsibility**

An effort to determine all pipelines and utilities which may impact the project has been made. All known pipelines and utilities have been approximately located and shown on the plans. The Contractor shall notify all utility and pipeline owners before beginning the work. Additional unknown utilities and pipelines may be found. Adjustments of these utilities or pipelines shall be done by others at no expense to the contractor. However, the Contractor shall cooperate and coordinate his work with the adjustment

The Contractor will anticipate this in making his bid. The contractor will not be allowed claims for damages or delays for these adjustments should they be necessary. However, additional time will be considered for the contract period.

This action, however, shall in no way be interpreted as relieving the Contractor of his responsibilities under the terms of the contract as set out in the plans and specifications. The Contractor shall repair any damage to the facilities caused by his operations at the Contractor's expense and shall restore facilities to service in a timely manner.

**53. Incidentals**

All items of work required under this contract not specifically called for in the proposal as pay items shall be considered incidental to the various bid items and no separate payment shall be made for same.

**54. Flagmen**

During certain phases of construction flagmen will be required to direct and control traffic. This work will not be paid for directly, but shall be considered incidental the various bid items and no separate payment shall be made for same.

**55. Field Office**

For this project the Contractor will not have to provide a field office.

**56. Wage Rates:**

The attached schedule of wages per hour for this Contract follows.



"General Decision Number: TX20200046 01/03/2020

Superseded General Decision Number: TX20190046

State: Texas

Construction Type: Heavy

Counties: Brazoria, Fort Bend, Galveston, Harris, Matagorda, Montgomery, Waller and Wharton Counties in Texas.

FLOOD CONTROL PROJECTS ONLY, (Does not Include any Water & Sewer Line work; Sewage Collection and Disposal Lines; Sewers (Sanitary Storm, etc.), or Shoreline Maintenance Water Mains and Water Supply Lines).

Note: Under Executive Order (EO) 13658, an hourly minimum wage of \$10.80 for calendar year 2020 applies to all contracts subject to the Davis-Bacon Act for which the contract is awarded (and any solicitation was issued) on or after January 1, 2015. If this contract is covered by the EO, the contractor must pay all workers in any classification listed on this wage determination at least \$10.80 per hour (or the applicable wage rate listed on this wage determination, if it is higher) for all hours spent performing on the contract in calendar year 2020. If this contract is covered by the EO and a classification considered necessary for performance of work on the contract does not appear on this wage determination, the contractor must pay workers in that classification at least the wage rate determined through the conformance process set forth in 29 CFR 5.5(a)(1)(ii) (or the EO minimum wage rate, if it is higher than the conformed wage rate). The EO minimum wage rate will be adjusted annually. Please note that this EO applies to the above-mentioned types of contracts entered into by the federal government that are subject to the Davis-Bacon Act itself, but it does not apply to contracts subject only to the Davis-Bacon Related Acts, including those set forth at 29 CFR 5.1(a)(2)-(60). Additional information on contractor requirements and worker protections under the EO is available at [www.dol.gov/whd/govcontracts](http://www.dol.gov/whd/govcontracts).

Modification Number    Publication Date  
0                      01/03/2020

Rates Fringes

ASPHALT DISTRIBUTOR.....\$ 9.47

Asphalt Paving Machine.....\$ 10.05

Asphalt Raker.....\$ 8.28

Asphalt Shoveler.....\$ 7.45

Batching Plant Weigher.....\$ 11.11

Broom or Sweeper Operator.....\$ 8.01

Bulldozer.....\$ 9.91

CARPENTER.....\$ 10.35

Concrete Curbing Mach.....\$ 8.80

Concrete Finisher-Paving.....\$ 9.87

Concrete Finisher-Structures.....\$ 9.86

Concrete Finishing Machine.....\$ 11.79

Concrete Joint Sealer.....\$ 10.50

Concrete Paving Float.....\$ 9.30

Concrete Paving Saw.....\$ 10.01

Concrete Paving Spreader.....\$ 9.32

Concrete Rubber.....\$ 9.00

Crane, Clamshell, Backhoe,  
Derrick, Dragline, Shovel.....\$ 11.35

Crusher or Screening Plant  
Operator.....\$ 11.00

ELECTRICIAN.....\$ 16.15

Flagger.....\$ 7.25

Form Builder (Structures).....\$ 9.96

Form Liner - Paving & Curb.....\$ 9.03

Form Setter (PAVING/CURB).....\$ 8.86

Form Setter-Structures.....\$ 9.05

Foundation Drill Operator,  
Crawler Mounted.....\$ 12.59

Foundation Drill Operator,  
Truck Mounted.....\$ 12.73

Front End Loader.....\$ 9.29

Labor Common.....\$ 7.45

Laborer-Utility.....\$ 8.53

Lineperson.....\$ 7.50

MANHOLE BUILDER (Brick).....\$ 8.49

MECHANIC.....\$ 11.38

Milling Machine Operator.....\$ 10.43

Mixer.....\$ 7.94

Motor Grader  
FINE GRADE.....\$ 11.11  
Other.....\$ 10.67

Oiler.....\$ 9.56

Painter-Structures.....\$ 14.00

Pavement Marking Machine.....\$ 7.45

Piledriver.....\$ 10.96

Pipe layer.....\$ 8.49

Reinforcing Steel Setter  
Paving.....\$ 12.50

Reinforcing Steel Setter  
Structures.....\$ 12.47

Roller, Pneumatic, Self  
Propelled.....\$ 7.96

Roller, Steel Wheel Other

Flatwheel or Tamping.....\$ 7.61

Roller, Steel Wheel Plant Mix  
Pavements.....\$ 9.25

Scraper.....\$ 8.69

Servicer.....\$ 9.51

SIGN ERECTOR.....\$ 10.06

Sign Installer.....\$ 7.45

Slipform Machine Operator.....\$ 9.20

Spreader Box Operator.....\$ 9.08

Steelworker Structural.....\$ 10.35

Tractor-Crawler Type.....\$ 10.12

Tractor-Pneumatic.....\$ 8.99

Traveling Mixer.....\$ 9.35

Trenching Machine, Heavy.....\$ 13.56

Trenching Machine, Light.....\$ 10.50

Truck Driver Lowboy Float.....\$ 11.29

Truck Driver Single Axle Heavy...\$ 8.76

Truck Driver Single Axle,  
Light.....\$ 8.15

Truck Driver Tandem Axle  
Semi-Trailer.....\$ 8.00

Wagon Drill, Boring Machine.....\$ 10.15

WELDER.....\$ 10.43

Work Zone Barricade.....\$ 7.45

-----  
WELDERS - Receive rate prescribed for craft performing  
operation to which welding is incidental.

=====

Note: Executive Order (EO) 13706, Establishing Paid Sick Leave for Federal Contractors applies to all contracts subject to the Davis-Bacon Act for which the contract is awarded (and any solicitation was issued) on or after January 1, 2017. If this contract is covered by the EO, the contractor must provide employees with 1 hour of paid sick leave for every 30 hours they work, up to 56 hours of paid sick leave each year. Employees must be permitted to use paid sick leave for their own illness, injury or other health-related needs, including preventive care; to assist a family member (or person who is like family to the employee) who is ill, injured, or has other health-related needs, including preventive care; or for reasons resulting from, or to assist a family member (or person who is like family to the employee) who is a victim of, domestic violence, sexual assault, or stalking. Additional information on contractor requirements and worker protections under the EO is available at [www.dol.gov/whd/govcontracts](http://www.dol.gov/whd/govcontracts).

Unlisted classifications needed for work not included within the scope of the classifications listed may be added after award only as provided in the labor standards contract clauses (29CFR 5.5 (a) (1) (ii)).

-----

The body of each wage determination lists the classification and wage rates that have been found to be prevailing for the cited type(s) of construction in the area covered by the wage determination. The classifications are listed in alphabetical order of ""identifiers"" that indicate whether the particular rate is a union rate (current union negotiated rate for local), a survey rate (weighted average rate) or a union average rate (weighted union average rate).

#### Union Rate Identifiers

A four letter classification abbreviation identifier enclosed in dotted lines beginning with characters other than ""SU"" or ""UAVG"" denotes that the union classification and rate were prevailing for that classification in the survey. Example: PLUM0198-005 07/01/2014. PLUM is an abbreviation identifier of the union which prevailed in the survey for this classification, which in this example would be Plumbers. 0198 indicates the local union number or district council number where applicable, i.e., Plumbers Local 0198. The next number, 005 in the example, is an internal number used in processing the wage determination. 07/01/2014 is the effective date of the most current negotiated rate, which in this example is July 1, 2014.

Union prevailing wage rates are updated to reflect all rate changes in the collective bargaining agreement (CBA) governing this classification and rate.

#### Survey Rate Identifiers

Classifications listed under the ""SU"" identifier indicate that no one rate prevailed for this classification in the survey and the published rate is derived by computing a weighted average rate based on all the rates reported in the survey for that classification. As this weighted average rate includes all rates reported in the survey, it may include both union and non-union rates. Example: SULA2012-007 5/13/2014. SU indicates the rates are survey rates based on a weighted average calculation of rates and are not majority rates. LA indicates the State of Louisiana. 2012 is the year of survey on which these classifications and rates are based. The next number, 007 in the example, is an internal number used in producing the wage determination. 5/13/2014 indicates the survey completion date for the classifications and rates under that identifier.

Survey wage rates are not updated and remain in effect until a new survey is conducted.

#### Union Average Rate Identifiers

Classification(s) listed under the UAVG identifier indicate that no single majority rate prevailed for those classifications; however, 100% of the data reported for the classifications was union data. EXAMPLE: UAVG-OH-0010 08/29/2014. UAVG indicates that the rate is a weighted union average rate. OH indicates the state. The next number, 0010 in the example, is an internal number used in producing the wage determination. 08/29/2014 indicates the survey completion date for the classifications and rates under that identifier.

A UAVG rate will be updated once a year, usually in January of each year, to reflect a weighted average of the current negotiated/CBA rate of the union locals from which the rate is based.

---

### WAGE DETERMINATION APPEALS PROCESS

1.) Has there been an initial decision in the matter? This can be:

- \* an existing published wage determination
- \* a survey underlying a wage determination
- \* a Wage and Hour Division letter setting forth a position on a wage determination matter
- \* a conformance (additional classification and rate) ruling

On survey related matters, initial contact, including requests for summaries of surveys, should be with the Wage and Hour Regional Office for the area in which the survey was conducted because those Regional Offices have responsibility for the Davis-Bacon survey program. If the response from this initial contact is not satisfactory, then the process described in 2.) and 3.) should be followed.

With regard to any other matter not yet ripe for the formal process described here, initial contact should be with the Branch of Construction Wage Determinations. Write to:

Branch of Construction Wage Determinations  
 Wage and Hour Division  
 U.S. Department of Labor  
 200 Constitution Avenue, N.W.  
 Washington, DC 20210

2.) If the answer to the question in 1.) is yes, then an interested party (those affected by the action) can request review and reconsideration from the Wage and Hour Administrator (See 29 CFR Part 1.8 and 29 CFR Part 7). Write to:

Wage and Hour Administrator  
 U.S. Department of Labor  
 200 Constitution Avenue, N.W.  
 Washington, DC 20210

The request should be accompanied by a full statement of the interested party's position and by any information (wage payment data, project description, area practice material, etc.) that the requestor considers relevant to the issue.

3.) If the decision of the Administrator is not favorable, an interested party may appeal directly to the Administrative Review Board (formerly the Wage Appeals Board). Write to:

Administrative Review Board  
 U.S. Department of Labor  
 200 Constitution Avenue, N.W.  
 Washington, DC 20210

4.) All decisions by the Administrative Review Board are final.

=====

END OF GENERAL DECISION

"



**BID PROPOSAL  
HIGHLAND SLOPE STABILITY  
BASE BID**

ITEM NO.	SPEC. NO.	DESCRIPTION	UNIT	QUAN.	UNIT PRICE IN WORDS	UNIT PRICE	TOTAL PRICE
1		MOBILIZATION	LS	1	_____ DOLLARS AND _____ CENTS		
2	100	REMOVE STAIRS, DECKS, WATER AND ELECTRICITY LINES	LS	1	_____ DOLLARS AND _____ CENTS		
3	100	REMOVAL OF DOCKS	EA.	4	_____ DOLLARS AND _____ CENTS		
4	100	REMOVE EXISTING CULVERTS WITH PIPES AND INLETS	LF.	372	_____ DOLLARS AND _____ CENTS		
5		FLATTEN SLOPES 4.5:1 ABOVE AVG. WATER LEVEL	CY.	6,778	_____ DOLLARS AND _____ CENTS		
6	132	SCARIFY AND RECOMPACT SLOPES	CY.	5,444	_____ DOLLARS AND _____ CENTS		
7		DISPOSE SOILS DIRECTLY NORTH OF SUBDIVISION	C.Y.	3,500	_____ DOLLARS AND _____ CENTS		
8		CUT INTERCEPTOR SWALE A	LF.	700	_____ DOLLARS AND _____ CENTS		
9		CUT INTERCEPTOR SWALE B	LF	690	_____ DOLLARS AND _____ CENTS		
10	432	INSTALL CONCRETE GROUTED RIP RAP	SY	41	_____ DOLLARS AND _____ CENTS		
11	162	PROPOSED SODDING & FERTILIZING	AC	3	_____ DOLLARS AND _____ CENTS		
12	100	REMOVE TREES & SHRUBS	LS	1	_____ DOLLARS AND _____ CENTS		
13	168	WATERING & MAINTENANCE	MO	6	_____ DOLLARS AND _____ CENTS		
<b>TOTAL BASE BID</b>							

**CONTRACT AWARD**

**CONTRACT FOR: HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY**

THIS CONTRACT IS ENTERED INTO BETWEEN GALVESTON COUNTY AND THE CONTRACTOR NAMED BELOW PURSUANT TO SUBCHAPTER B, CHAPTER 271, TEXAS LOCAL GOVERNMENT CODE, AND THE REFERENCED INVITATION TO BID.

Contract No: 20-1122 \_\_\_\_\_

Bid No: B211022 \_\_\_\_\_

Contractor: \_\_\_\_\_

The Specifications and Drawings are enumerated as follows:

Standard Specifications: **Standard Specifications For Construction And Maintenance Of Highways, Streets And Bridges; adopted by the Texas Department Of Transportation, 2014**

Special Provisions: SP 1-9

Special Items:

DRAWINGS: 1 thru 12 \_\_\_\_\_  
ADDENDA: \_\_\_\_\_

**Contract Award** (continued)

Invitation to Bid, General Provisions, Special Provisions, Bid Forms, Non-Collusion Affidavit, Vendor Qualification Packet, Debarment Form, Special Provisions for Construction, Bid Proposal, Affidavit and Surety Forms, Wage Rates, Specifications and Plans attached to this Contract Award are all made a part of this Contract and collectively evidence and constitute the entire contract. Contractor shall furnish all materials, perform all of the work required to be done and do everything else required by these documents.

Time of Completion: The Contractor shall complete the work within 75 Calendar Days of the issuance of the notice to proceed. The time set forth for completion of the work is an essential element of the Contract.

The Contract Sum: The County shall pay the Contractor for performance of the Contract, the sum of \_\_\_\_\_

Dollars and \_\_\_/100 (\$ \_\_\_\_\_), payments to be made as described herein.

Performance Bond required: (x) yes ( ) no  
Payment Bond required: (x) yes ( ) no

This Contract is issued pursuant to award made by Commissioners' Court on \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_.

EXECUTED this \_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_.

COUNTY OF GALVESTON, TEXAS

BY: \_\_\_\_\_  
MARK HENRY, County Judge

ATTEST:

\_\_\_\_\_  
DWIGHT SULLIVAN, County Clerk

CONTRACTOR

BY: \_\_\_\_\_  
Signature - Title  
\_\_\_\_\_  
Printed Name

# CONTRACTOR'S AFFIDAVIT OF PAYMENT OF DEBTS AND CLAIMS

TO (Owner):

PROJECT NO:

CONTRACT FOR:

PROJECT:  
(name, address)

CONTRACT DATE:

State of:

County of:

The undersigned, hereby certifies that, except as listed below, he has paid in full or has otherwise satisfied all obligations for all materials and equipment furnished, for all work, labor, and services performed, and for all known indebtedness and claims against the Contractor for damages arising in any manner in connection with the performance of the Contract referenced above for which the Owner or his property might in any way be held responsible.

EXCEPTIONS: (If none, write "None". If required by the Owner, the Contractor shall furnish bond satisfactory to the Owner for each exception.)

SUPPORTING DOCUMENTS ATTACHED HERETO:

1. Consent of Surety to Final Payment.  
Whenever Surety is involved, consent of Surety is required. CONSENT OF SURETY, may be used for this purpose.  
Indicate attachment: yes \_\_\_\_\_ no \_\_\_\_\_

The following supporting documents should be attached hereto if required by the Owner:

1. Contractor's Release or Waiver of Liens, conditional upon receipt of final payment.
2. Separate Releases or Waivers of Liens from Subcontractors and material and equipment suppliers to the extent required by the Owner, accompanied by a list thereof.
3. Contractor's Affidavit of Release of Liens.

CONTRACTOR:

Address:

BY:

Subscribed and sworn to before me this

day of \_\_\_\_\_ 20

Notary Public:

My Commission Expires:

**CONTRACTOR'S AFFIDAVIT OF RELEASE OF LIEN**

TO (Owner):

PROJECT NO:

CONTRACT FOR:

PROJECT:  
(name, address)

CONTRACT DATE:

State of:

County of:

The undersigned, hereby certifies that, to the best of his knowledge, information and belief, except as listed below, the Releases or Waivers of Lien attached hereto include the Contractor, all Subcontractors, all suppliers of materials and equipment, and all performers of Work, labor or services who have or may have liens against any property of the Owner arising in any manner out of the performance of the Contract referenced above.

EXCEPTIONS: (If none, write "None". If required by the Owner, the Contractor shall furnish bond satisfactory to the Owner for each exception.)

SUPPORTING DOCUMENTS ATTACHED HERETO:

1. Contractor's Release or Waiver of Liens, conditional upon receipt of final payment.
2. Separate Releases or Waivers of Liens from Sub-contractors and material and equipment suppliers, to the extent required by the Owner, accompanied by a list thereof.

CONTRACTOR:

Address:

BY:

Subscribed and sworn to before me this

day of 20

Notary Public:

My Commission Expires:

**CONSENT OF SURETY TO REDUCTION IN OR PARTIAL RELEASE OF RETAINAGE**

TO (Owner):

PROJECT NO:

PROJECT:  
(name, address)

CONTRACT FOR:

CONTRACT DATE:

In accordance with the provisions of the Contract between the Owner and the Contractor as indicated above, the  
(here insert name and address of Surety as it appears in the bond).

, SURETY,

on bond of (here insert name and address of Contractor as it appears in the bond)

, CONTRACTOR,

hereby approves the reduction in or partial release of retainage to the contractor as follows:

The Surety agrees that such reduction in or partial release of retainage to the Contractor shall not relieve the Surety of any of its  
obligations to (here insert name and address of Owner)

, OWNER,

as set forth in the said Surety's bond.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF,  
the Surety has hereunto set its had this

day of

20 .

\_\_\_\_\_  
Surety

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature of Authorized Representative

\_\_\_\_\_  
Title

ATTEST:  
(Seal):

**CONSENT OF SURETY COMPANY TO FINAL PAYMENT**

TO (Owner):

PROJECT NO:

PROJECT:  
(name, address)

CONTRACT FOR:

CONTRACT DATE:

CONTRACTOR:

---

In accordance with the provisions of the Contract between the Owner and the Contractor as indicated above, the  
(here insert name and address of Surety as it appears in the bond).

, SURETY COMPANY,

on bond of (here insert name and address of Contractor )

, CONTRACTOR,

hereby approves of the final payment to the Contractor, and agrees that final payment to the Contractor shall not relieve the Surety  
Company of any of its obligations to (here insert name and address of Owner)

, OWNER

as set forth in the said Surety Company's bond.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF,  
the Surety Company has hereunto set its had this

day of \_\_\_\_\_ 20\_\_ .

\_\_\_\_\_  
Surety Company

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature of Authorized Representative

\_\_\_\_\_  
Title

ATTEST:  
(Seal):

NOTE: This form is to be use as a companion document to Contractor's Affidavit of Payment of Debts and Claims.

## GOVERNING SPECIFICATIONS AND SPECIAL PROVISIONS

All Specifications and Special Provisions and applicable to this Project are identified as follows:

### **Standard Specifications:**

"Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges" as adopted by the Texas Department of Transportation, effective date November 1, 2014.

GENERAL: The above listed specification items are those under which payment is to be made. These, together with such other pertinent items, if any as may be referred to in the above listed specification items, and including the special provisions listed above, constitute the complete specification for this project. No separate payment will be made for any item that is not specifically set further in the bid sheets and all costs therefore shall be included in the prices named in the bid sheets for the various appurtenant items of work.

### **TXDOT**

#### **SPECIAL PROVISIONS TO ITEMS 1-9**

Preparing Right of Way	100
Sodding for Erosion Control	162
Seeding for Erosion Control	164
Riprap	432

### **ASTM**

#### **SPECIAL PROVISIONS TO ITEMS 1-9**

Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lbf/ft <sup>3</sup> (600 kN-m/m <sup>3</sup> ))	D698
--	------



## SPECIAL PROVISION TO ITEM 1

### "DEFINITION OF TERMS"

For this project, Item 1 of the Texas Standard Specifications is hereby amended with respect to the clauses cited below and no other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed hereby:

THE TERM "DEPARTMENT," "STATE," "STATE HIGHWAY DEPARTMENT OF TEXAS", "TXDOT", "TEXAS DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION", STATE DEPARTMENT OF HIGHWAYS AND PUBLIC TRANSPORTATION," "STATE DEPARTMENT OF HIGHWAYS AND PUBLIC TRANSPORTATION COMMISSION," "COMMISSION," AND "STATE HIGHWAY COMMISSION," SHALL, IN THE USE OF THE STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR ALL WORK IN CONNECTION WITH THIS PROJECT, BE DEEMED TO MEAN GALVESTON COUNTY, PARTY OF THE FIRST PART IN ACCOMPANYING CONTRACT OR CONTRACTS. ANY REFERENCE IN THE TEXAS STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS TO THE STATE OF TEXAS, ITS OFFICIALS, EMPLOYEES, OR AGENTS SHALL BE DEEMED TO MEAN GALVESTON COUNTY, ITS OFFICIALS, EMPLOYEES, OR AGENTS.

Articles 1.26, "Certificate of Insurance" ; 1.28, "Commission", 1.47, "Department", 1.70 "Letting Official " and 1.124 "State" are deleted.

Article 1.53, "ENGINEER", is revised to read in its entirety as follows:

1.53 ENGINEER. Galveston County Engineer or his authorized representatives. If a representative is authorized to function as the ENGINEER'S representative with respect to certain ENGINEER'S activities that representative's responsibilities and obligations shall be limited as provided in Article 1.148.

Article 1.64, "INSPECTOR," is revised to read in its entirety as follows:

1.64 INSPECTOR. The representative of the ENGINEER assigned and authorized to observe or inspect any or all parts of the work and the material to be used therein. A representative is authorized to function as the ENGINEER'S representative with respect to certain activities, and that representative's responsibilities and obligations shall be limited as provided in Article 1.148.

## Special Provisions to Item 1

### "DEFINITION OF TERMS"

#### ADDITIONAL ARTICLES ARE ADDED AS FOLLOWS:

1.148 CONSULTING ENGINEER. Independent engineering firms contracting with Galveston County for the providing of professional engineering services. The engineering firms are the representatives of Galveston County only to the extent provided in the Contract documents and in such special instances where they are specifically authorized by Galveston County so to act. All powers and rights assigned by Galveston County to the engineering firms with respect to the work are solely and exclusively for the benefit of Galveston County and not for the CONTRACTOR. In carrying out of its powers and rights assigned by Galveston County the engineering firms shall function as a representative of Galveston County and shall act by and for Galveston County. Irrespective of what authority may be assigned by Galveston County to the engineering firms, CONTRACTOR remains fully and solely responsible and liable for its obligations to perform the work in accordance with the requirements of the plans and specifications; to insure against failures in safety precautions; to carry out his work pursuant to safe methods of construction; to select and fulfill the proper manner, means, and methods in performing the work in order to meet the plans and specifications; and to complete the work in accordance with the contract documents.

SPECIAL PROVISION TO ITEM 2

INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS

For this project, Item 2 of the Texas Standard Specifications is hereby deleted in its entirety.

The Instructions to Bidders is included elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

SPECIAL PROVISION TO ITEM 3  
AWARD AND EXECUTION OF CONTRACT

For this project, Item 3 of the Texas Standard Specifications is hereby deleted in its entirety.

The Award and Execution of Contract is included elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

## SPECIAL PROVISION TO ITEM 4

### SCOPE OF WORK

For this project, Item 4 of the Texas Standard Specifications is hereby amended with respect to the clauses cited below and no other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed hereby.

ARTICLE 4.2 "CHANGES IN WORK;" ARTICLE 4.3 "DIFFERING SITE CONDITIONS" and ARTICLE 4.4 "REQUESTS AND CLAIMS FOR ADDITIONAL COMPENSATION" are deleted in their entirety and replaced by Article 41 "CHANGES and ALTERATIONS" and ARTICLE 42 "EXTRA WORK" of "Special Provisions for Construction".

## SPECIAL PROVISION TO ITEM 5

### CONTROL OF THE WORK

For this project, Item 5 of the Texas Standard Specifications is hereby amended with respect to the clauses cited below and no other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed hereby.

ARTICLE 5.2 "PLANS AND WORKING DRAWINGS." The first sentence of the first paragraph is hereby revised to read as follows:

When required, the Contractor shall provide working drawings to supplement the plans with all necessary details not included on the Contract plans.

ARTICLE 5.5 "COOPERATION OF CONTRACTOR." The last sentence of the first paragraph is hereby revised to read as follows:

The Contractor will be supplied with three (3) copies of the plans, specifications and special provisions and he shall have one (1) copy of each available on the project at all times.

ARTICLE 5.6 "CONSTRUCTION SURVEYING," is hereby deleted in its entirety.

ARTICLE 5.7 "INSPECTION." The sixth sentence of the second paragraph is hereby revised to read as follows:

If the uncovered work is acceptable, the costs to uncover, remove and replace or make good the parts removed will be paid for in accordance with Article 41. "Changes and Alterations" of "Special Provisions for Construction".

ARTICLE 5.8 "FINAL ACCEPTANCE," is hereby deleted in its entirety. It is replaced by Article 6(b). "PAYMENTS TO CONTRACTOR, FINAL PAYMENT" of "Special Provisions for Construction".

## SPECIAL PROVISION TO ITEM 6

### CONTROL OF MATERIALS

For this project, Item 6 of the Texas Standard Specifications is hereby amended with respect to the clauses cited below and no other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed hereby.

ARTICLE 6.1 "SOURCE CONTROL." Paragraph A. "Buy America" and B. "Buy Texas" are hereby deleted in their entirety.

ARTICLE 6.7 "Department-furnished Material" is hereby deleted in its entirety.

## SPECIAL PROVISION TO ITEM 7

### LEGAL RELATIONS AND RESPONSIBILITIES

For this project, Item 7 of the Texas Standard Specifications is hereby amended with respect to the clauses cited below and no other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed hereby.

ARTICLE 7.4 "INSURANCE AND BONDS" is hereby deleted in its entirety.

ARTICLE 7.5 "RESTORING SURFACES OPENED BY PERMISSION." The third sentence of the first paragraph is hereby revised to read as follows:

Payment for repair of surfaces opened by permission will be made in accordance with Article 41. "Changes and Alterations" of "Special Provisions for Construction".



## SPECIAL PROVISION TO ITEM 8

### PROSECUTION AND PROGRESS

For this project, Item 8 of the Texas Standard Specifications is hereby amended with respect to the clauses cited below and no other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed hereby.

ARTICLE 8.1 "PROSECUTION OF WORK" The third sentence in the first paragraph is hereby revised to read as follows:

"The Contractor shall begin the work to be performed under the contract within ten (10) days after the date of the authorization to begin work as shown on the work order.

ARTICLE 8.2 "PROGRESS SCHEDULES", B. "CONSTRUCTION CONTRACTS" The first sentence in the first paragraph is hereby revised to read as follows:

If required by the Engineer, before starting work on a construction Contract, prepare and submit a progress schedule based on the sequence of work and traffic control plan shown in the Contract.

## SPECIAL PROVISION TO ITEM 9

### MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

For this project, Item 9 of the Texas Standard Specifications is hereby amended with respect to the clauses cited below and no other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed hereby.

ARTICLE 9.2 "PLANS QUANTITY MEASUREMENT" is hereby revised to read as follows: Plans quantities may not represent the exact quantity of work performed or material moved, handled, or placed during the execution of the Contract. The estimated bid quantities are designated as final payment quantities.

ARTICLE 9.4 "PAYMENT FOR EXTRA WORK" is hereby revised to read as follows:

Extra work ordered, performed and accepted will be paid for in accordance with ARTICLE 42, "EXTRA WORK" of "Special Provisions for Construction".

ARTICLE 9.5 "FORCE ACCOUNT" is hereby deleted in its entirety.

ARTICLE 9.6 "PROGRESS PAYMENTS" is hereby deleted in its entirety and replaced by ARTICLE 36, "PROGRESS PAYMENTS AND RETAINAGE" of Section IV, "General Terms and Conditions".

ARTICLE 9.8 "FINAL PAYMENT" and ARTICLE 40, "FINAL PAYMENT" are hereby deleted in their entirety and replaced by ARTICLE 6(b), "PAYMENTS TO CONTACTOR, FINAL PAYMENT" of "Special Provisions for Construction".

## Item 100

### Preparing Right of Way




---

#### 1. DESCRIPTION

Prepare the right of way and designated easements for construction operations by removing and disposing of all obstructions when removal of such obstructions is not specifically shown on the plans to be paid by other Items.

---

#### 2. CONSTRUCTION

Protect designated features on the right of way and prune trees and shrubs as directed. Do not park equipment, service equipment, store materials, or disturb the root area under the branches of trees designated for preservation. Treat cuts on trees with an approved tree wound dressing within 20 min. of making a pruning cut or otherwise causing damage to the tree when shown on the plans. Follow all local and state regulations when burning. Pile and burn brush at approved locations as directed. Coordinate work with state and federal authorities when working in state or national forests or parks. Test, remove, and dispose of hazardous materials in accordance with Article 6.10., "Hazardous Materials."

Clear areas shown on the plans of all obstructions, except those landscape features that are to be preserved. Such obstructions include remains of houses and other structures, foundations, floor slabs, concrete, brick, lumber, plaster, septic tank drain fields, basements, abandoned utility pipes or conduits, equipment, fences, retaining walls, and other items as specified on the plans. Remove vegetation and other landscape features not designated for preservation, curb and gutter, driveways, paved parking areas, miscellaneous stone, sidewalks, drainage structures, manholes, inlets, abandoned railroad tracks, scrap iron, and debris, whether above or below ground. Removal of live utility facilities is not included in this Item. Remove culverts, storm sewers, manholes, and inlets in proper sequence to maintain traffic and drainage.

Notify the Engineer in writing when items not shown on the plans and not reasonably detectable (buried with no obvious indication of presence) are encountered and required to be removed. These items will be handled in accordance with Article 4.5., "Differing Site Conditions."

Remove obstructions not designated for preservation to 2 ft. below natural ground in areas receiving embankment. Remove obstructions to 2 ft. below the excavation level in areas to be excavated. Remove obstructions to 1 ft. below natural ground in all other areas. Cut trees and stumps off to ground level when allowed by the plans or directed. Plug the remaining ends of abandoned underground structures over 3 in. in diameter with concrete to form a tight closure. Backfill, compact, and restore areas where obstructions have been removed unless otherwise directed. Use approved material for backfilling. Dispose of wells in accordance with Item 103, "Disposal of Wells."

Accept ownership, unless otherwise directed, and dispose of removed materials and debris at locations off the right of way in accordance with local, state, and federal requirements.

---

#### 3. MEASUREMENT

This Item will be measured by the acre; by the 100-ft. station, regardless of the width of the right of way; or by each tree removed.

# Item 162

## Sodding for Erosion Control



### 1. DESCRIPTION

Provide and install grass sod as shown on the plans or as directed.

### 2. MATERIALS

Use live, growing grass sod of the type specified on the plans. Use grass sod with a healthy root system and dense matted roots throughout the soil of the sod for a minimum thickness of 1 in. Do not use sod from areas where the grass is thinned out. Keep sod material moist from the time it is dug until it is planted. Grass sod with dried roots is unacceptable.

- 2.1. **Block Sod.** Use block, rolled, or solid sod free from noxious weeds, Johnson grass, other grasses, or any matter deleterious to the growth and subsistence of the sod.
- 2.2. **Mulch Sod.** Use mulch sod from an approved source, free from noxious weeds, Johnson grass, other grasses, or any matter deleterious to the growth and subsistence of the sod.
- 2.3. **Fertilizer.** Furnish fertilizer in accordance with Article 166.2., "Materials."
- 2.4. **Water.** Furnish water in accordance with Article 168.2., "Materials."
- 2.5. **Mulch.** Use straw mulch consisting of oat, wheat, or rice straw or hay mulch of either Bermudagrass or prairie grasses. Use straw or hay mulch free of Johnson grass and other noxious and foreign materials. Keep the mulch dry and do not use molded or rotted material.
- 2.6. **Tacking Methods.** Use a tacking agent applied in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations or a crimping method on all straw or hay mulch operations. Use tacking agents as approved or as specified on the plans.

### 3. CONSTRUCTION

Cultivate the area to a depth of 4 in. before placing the sod. Plant the sod specified and mulch, if required, after the area has been completed to lines and grades as shown on the plans. Apply fertilizer uniformly over the entire area in accordance with Article 166.3., "Construction," and water in accordance with Article 168.3., "Construction." Plant between the average date of the last freeze in the Spring and 6 weeks before the average date for the first freeze in the Fall according to the Texas Almanac for the project area.

- 3.1. **Sodding Types.**
  - 3.1.1. **Spot Sodding.** Use only Bermudagrass sod. Create furrows parallel to the roadway, approximately 5 in. deep and on 18-in. centers. Sod a continuous row not less than 3 in. wide in the 2 furrows adjacent to the roadway. Place 3-in. squares of sod on 15-in. centers in the remaining furrows. Place sod so that the root system will be completely covered by the soil. Firm all sides of the sod with the soil without covering the sod with soil.
  - 3.1.2. **Block Sodding.** Place sod over the prepared area. Roll or tamp the sodded area to form a thoroughly compacted, solid mat filling all voids in the sodded area with additional sod. Trim and remove all visible netting and backing materials. Keep sod along edges of curbs, driveways, walkways, etc., trimmed until acceptance.

- 3.1.3. **Mulch Sodding.** Mow sod source to no shorter than 4 in., rake and remove cuttings. Disk the sod in 2 directions, cutting the sod to a minimum of 4 in. Excavate the sod material to a depth of no more than 6 in. Keep excavated material moist or it will be rejected. Distribute the mulch sod uniformly over the area to a depth of 6 in. loose, unless otherwise shown on the plans, and roll with a light roller or other suitable equipment.
- Add or reshape the mulch sod to meet the requirements of Section 162.3.2., "Finishing."
- 3.2. **Finishing.** Smooth and shape the area after planting to conform to the desired cross-sections. Spread any excess soil uniformly over adjacent areas or dispose of the excess soil as directed.
- 3.3. **Straw or Hay Mulch.** Apply straw or hay mulch for "Spot Sodding" and "Mulch Sodding" uniformly over the area as shown on the plans. Apply straw mulch at 2 to 2-1/2 tons per acre. Apply hay mulch at 1-1/2 to 2 tons per acre. Use a tacking method over the mulched area.

---

#### 4. MEASUREMENT

"Spot Sodding," "Block Sodding," and "Straw or Hay Mulch" will be measured by the square yard in its final position. "Mulch Sodding" will be measured by the square yard in its final position or by the cubic yard in vehicles as delivered to the planting site.

---

#### 5. PAYMENT

The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit price bid for "Spot Sodding," "Block Sodding," "Straw or Hay Mulch," or "Mulch Sodding." This price is full compensation for securing a source, excavation, loading, hauling, placing, rolling, finishing, furnishing materials, equipment, labor, tools, supplies, and incidentals. Fertilizer will not be paid for directly but will be subsidiary to this Item.

Unless otherwise specified on the plans, water, except for that used for maintaining and preparing the sod before planting, will be measured and paid for in accordance with Item 168, "Vegetative Watering

# Item 432

## Riprap



### 1. DESCRIPTION

Furnish and place concrete, stone, cement-stabilized, or special riprap.

### 2. MATERIALS

Furnish materials in accordance with the following Items.

- ▲ Item 420, "Concrete Substructures,"
- ▲ Item 421, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete,"
- ▲ Item 431, "Pneumatically Placed Concrete,"
- ▲ Item 440, "Reinforcement for Concrete," and
- ▲ [DMS-6200](#), "Filter Fabric."

- 2.1. **Concrete Riprap.** Use Class B Concrete unless otherwise shown on the plans.
- 2.2. **Pneumatically Placed Concrete Riprap.** Use Class II concrete that meets Item 431, "Pneumatically Placed Concrete," unless otherwise shown on the plans.
- 2.3. **Stone Riprap.** Use durable natural stone with a bulk specific gravity of at least 2.50 as determined by [Tex-403-A](#) unless otherwise shown on the plans. Provide stone that, when tested in accordance with [Tex-411-A](#), has weight loss of no more than 18% after 5 cycles of magnesium sulfate solution.
- Perform a size verification test on the first 5,000 sq. yd. of finished riprap stone for all types of stone riprap at a location determined by the Engineer. Test the riprap stone in accordance with ASTM D5519. Additional tests may be required. Do not place additional riprap until the initial 5,000 sq. yd. of riprap has been approved.
- Provide grout or mortar in accordance with Item 421, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete," when specified. Provide grout with a consistency that will flow into and fill all voids.
- Provide filter fabric in accordance with [DMS-6200](#), "Filter Fabric." Provide Type 2 filter fabric for protection stone riprap unless otherwise shown on the plans. Provide Type 2 filter fabric for Type R, F, or Common stone riprap when shown on the plans.
- 2.3.1. **Type R.** Use stones between 50 and 250 lb. with at least 50% of the stones heavier than 100 lb.
- 2.3.2. **Type F.** Use stones between 50 and 250 lb. with at least 40% of the stones heavier than 100 lb. Use stones with at least 1 broad flat surface.
- 2.3.3. **Common.** Use stones between 50 and 250 lb. Use stones that are at least 3 in. in their least dimension. Use stones that are at least twice as wide as they are thick. When shown on the plans or approved, material may consist of broken concrete removed under the Contract or from other approved sources. Cut exposed reinforcement flush with all surfaces before placement of each piece of broken concrete.
- 2.3.4. **Protection.** Use boulders or quarried rock that meets the gradation requirements of Table 1. Both the width and the thickness of each piece of riprap must be at least 1/3 of the length. When shown on the plans or approved, material may consist of broken concrete removed under the Contract or from other approved sources. Cut exposed reinforcement flush with all surfaces before placement of each piece of broken

concrete. Determine gradation of the finished, in-place, riprap stone under the direct supervision of the Engineer in accordance with ASTM D5519.

**Table 1**  
**In-Place Protection Riprap Gradation Requirements**

Size	Maximum Size (lb.)	90% Size <sup>1</sup> (lb.)	50% Size <sup>2</sup> (lb.)	8% Size <sup>3</sup> Minimum (lb.)
12 in.	200	80–180	30–75	3
15 in.	320	170–300	60–165	20
18 in.	530	290–475	105–220	22
21 in.	800	460–720	175–300	25
24 in.	1,000	550–850	200–325	30
30 in.	2,600	1,150–2,250	400–900	40

1. Defined as that size such that 10% of the total riprap stone, by weight, is larger and 90% is smaller.
2. Defined as that size such that 50% of the total riprap stone, by weight, is larger and 50% is smaller.
3. Defined as that size such that 92% of the total riprap stone, by weight, is larger and 8% is smaller.

The Engineer may require in-place verification of the stone size. Determine the in-place size of the riprap stone by taking linear transects along the riprap and measuring the intermediate axis of the stone at select intervals. Place a tape measure along the riprap and determine the intermediate axis size of the stone at 2 ft. intervals. Measure a minimum of 100 stones, either in a single transect or in multiple transects, then follow ASTM D5519 Test Procedure Part B to determine the gradation. Table 2 is a guide for comparing the stone size in inches to the stone weight shown in Table 1.

**Table 2**  
**Protection Riprap Stone Size<sup>1</sup>**

Size	Dmax (in.)	D90 (in.)	D50 (in.)	D8 (in.)
12 in.	13.76	10.14–13.29	7.31–9.92	3.39
15 in.	16.10	13.04–15.75	9.21–12.91	6.39
18 in.	19.04	15.58–18.36	11.10–14.21	6.59
21 in.	21.85	18.17–21.09	13.16–15.75	6.88
24 in.	23.53	19.28–22.29	13.76–16.18	7.31
30 in.	32.36	24.65–30.84	17.34–22.72	8.05

1. Based on a Specific Gravity of 2.5 and using the following equation for the intermediate axis diameter  $D = \{(12 \cdot W)/(Gs \cdot 62.4 \cdot 0.85)\}^{1/3}$

where:

D = intermediate axis diameter in in.;

W = weight of stone in lbs.;

Gs = Specific Gravity of stone.

**Note**—If the Specific Gravity of the stone is different than 2.5, then the above equation can be used to determine the appropriate size using the actual Specific Gravity.

If required, provide bedding stone that, in-place, meets the gradation requirements shown in Table 3 or as otherwise shown on the plans. Determine the size distribution in Table 3 in accordance with ASTM D6913.

**Table 3**  
**Protection Riprap Bedding Material Gradation Requirements**

Sieve Size (Sq. Mesh)	% by Weight Passing
3"	100
1-1/2"	50–80
3/4"	20–60
#4	0–15
#10	0–5

- 2.4. **Cement-Stabilized Riprap.** Provide aggregate that meets Item 247, "Flexible Base," for the type and grade shown on the plans. Use cement-stabilized riprap with 7% hydraulic cement by dry weight of the aggregate.
- 2.5. **Special Riprap.** Furnish materials for special riprap according to the plans.

### 3. CONSTRUCTION

Dress slopes and protected areas to the line and grade shown on the plans before the placement of riprap. Place riprap and toe walls according to details and dimensions shown on the plans or as directed.

- 3.1. **Concrete Riprap.** Reinforce concrete riprap with  $6 \times 6 - W2.9 \times W2.9$  welded wire fabric or with No. 3 or No. 4 reinforcing bars spaced at a maximum of 18 in. in each direction unless otherwise shown. Alternative styles of welded wire fabric that provide at least 0.058 sq. in. of steel per foot in both directions may be used if approved. A combination of welded wire fabric and reinforcing bars may be provided when both are permitted. Provide a minimum 6-in. lap at all splices. Provide horizontal cover of at least 1 in. and no more than 3 in. at the edge of the riprap. Place the first parallel bar no more than 6 in. from the edge of concrete. Use approved supports to hold the reinforcement approximately equidistant from the top and bottom surface of the slab. Adjust reinforcement during concrete placement to maintain correct position.

Sprinkle or sprinkle and consolidate the subgrade before the concrete is placed as directed. All surfaces must be moist when concrete is placed.

Compact and shape the concrete once it has been placed to conform to the dimensions shown on the plans. Finish the surface with a wood float after it has set sufficiently to avoid slumping to secure a smooth surface or broom finish as approved.

Cure the riprap immediately after the finishing operation according to Item 420, "Concrete Substructures."

- 3.2. **Stone Riprap.** Provide the following types of stone riprap when shown on the plans:

- 🚧 **Dry Riprap.** Stone riprap with voids filled with only spalls or small stones.
- 🚧 **Grouted Riprap.** Type R, F, or Common stone riprap with voids grouted after all the stones are in place.
- 🚧 **Mortared Riprap.** Type F stone riprap laid and mortared as each stone is placed.

Use spalls and small stones lighter than 25 lb. to fill open joints and voids in stone riprap, and place to a tight fit.

Place mortar or grout only when the air temperature is above 35°F. Protect work from rapid drying for at least 3 days after placement.

Place filter fabric with the length running up and down the slope unless otherwise approved. Ensure fabric has a minimum overlap of 2 ft. Secure fabric with nails or pins. Use nails at least 2 in. long with washers or U-shaped pins with legs at least 9 in. long. Space nails or pins at a maximum of 10 ft. in each direction and 5 ft. along the seams. Alternative anchorage and spacing may be used when approved.

- 3.2.1. **Type R.** Construct riprap as shown in Figure 1 on the *Stone Riprap Standard* and as shown on the plans. Place stones in a single layer with close joints so most of their weight is carried by the earth and not the adjacent stones. Place the upright axis of the stones at an angle of approximately 90° to the embankment slope. Place each course from the bottom of the embankment upward with the larger stones in the lower courses.

Fill open joints between stones with spalls. Place stones to create a uniform finished top surface. Do not exceed a 6-in. variation between the tops of adjacent stones. Replace, embed deeper, or chip away stones that project more than the allowable amount above the finished surface.

Prevent earth, sand, or foreign material from filling the spaces between the stones when the plans require Type R stone riprap to be grouted. Wet the stones thoroughly after they are in place, fill the spaces between the stones with grout, and pack. Sweep the surface of the riprap with a stiff broom after grouting.



3.2.2. **Type F.**

3.2.2.1. **Dry Placement.** Construct riprap as shown in Figure 2 on the *Stone Riprap Standard*. Set the flat surface on a prepared horizontal earth bed, and overlap the underlying course to secure a lapped surface. Place the large stones first, roughly arranged in close contact. Fill the spaces between the large stones with suitably sized stones placed to leave the surface evenly stepped and conforming to the contour required. Place stone to drain water down the face of the slope.

3.2.2.2. **Grouting.** Construct riprap as shown in Figure 3 on the *Stone Riprap Standard*. Size, shape, and lay large flat-surfaced stones to produce an even surface with minimal voids. Place stones with the flat surface facing upward parallel to the slope. Place the largest stones near the base of the slope. Fill spaces between the larger stones with stones of suitable size, leaving the surface smooth, tight, and conforming to the contour required. Place the stones to create a plane surface with a variation no more than 6 in. in 10 ft. from true plane. Provide the same degree of accuracy for warped and curved surfaces. Prevent earth, sand, or foreign material from filling the spaces between the stones. Wet the stones thoroughly after they are in place, fill the spaces between them with grout, and pack. Sweep the surface with a stiff broom after grouting.

3.2.2.3. **Mortaring.** Construct riprap as shown in Figure 2 on the *Stone Riprap Standard*. Lap courses as described for dry placement. Wet the stones thoroughly before placing mortar. Bed the larger stones in fresh mortar as they are being placed and shove adjacent stones into contact with one another. Spread excess mortar forced out during placement of the stones uniformly over them to fill all voids completely. Point up all joints roughly either with flush joints or shallow, smooth-raked joints as directed.

3.2.3. **Common.** Construct riprap as shown in Figure 4 on the *Stone Riprap Standard*. Place stones on a bed excavated for the base course. Bed the base course of stone well into the ground with the edges in contact. Bed and place each succeeding course in even contact with the preceding course. Use spalls and small stones to fill any open joints and voids in the riprap. Ensure the finished surface presents an even, tight surface, true to the line and grades of the typical sections.

Prevent earth, sand, or foreign material from filling the spaces between the stones when the plans require grouting common stone riprap. Wet the stones thoroughly after they are in place; fill the spaces between them with grout; and pack. Sweep the surface with a stiff broom after grouting.

3.2.4. **Protection.** Construct riprap as shown in Figure 5 on the *Stone Riprap Standard*. Place riprap stone on the slopes within the limits shown on the plans. Place stone for riprap on the filter fabric to produce a reasonably well-graded mass of riprap with the minimum practicable percentage of voids. Construct the riprap to the lines and grades shown on the plans or staked in the field. A tolerance of +6 in. and -0 in. from the slope line and grades shown on the plans is allowed in the finished surface of the riprap. Place riprap to its full thickness in a single operation. Avoid displacing the filter fabric. Ensure the entire mass of stones in their final position is free from objectionable pockets of small stones and clusters of larger stones. Do not place riprap in layers, and do not place it by dumping it into chutes, dumping it from the top of the slope, pushing it from the top of the slope, or any method likely to cause segregation of the various sizes. Obtain the desired distribution of the various sizes of stones throughout the mass by selective loading of material at the quarry or other source or by other methods of placement that will produce the specified results. Rearrange individual stones by mechanical equipment or by hand if necessary to obtain a reasonably well-graded distribution of stone sizes. Use the bedding thickness shown and place stone for riprap on the bedding material to produce a reasonably well-graded mass of riprap with the minimum practicable percentage of voids if required on the plans.

3.3. **Pneumatically Placed Concrete Riprap, Class II.** Meet Item 431, "Pneumatically Placed Concrete." Provide reinforcement following the details on the plans and Item 440, "Reinforcement for Concrete." Support reinforcement with approved supports throughout placement of concrete.

Give the surface a wood-float finish or a gun finish as directed. Cure the riprap with membrane-curing compound immediately after the finishing operation in accordance with Item 420, "Concrete Substructures."

- 3.4. **Cement-Stabilized Riprap.** Follow the requirements of the plans and the provisions for concrete riprap except when reinforcement is not required. The Engineer will approve the design and mixing of the cement-stabilized riprap.
- 3.5. **Special Riprap.** Construct special riprap according to the plans.

---

4. **MEASUREMENT**

This Item will be measured by the cubic yard of material complete in place. Volume will be computed on the basis of the measured area in place and the thickness and toe wall width shown on the plans.

If required on the plans, the pay quantity of the bedding material for stone riprap for protection to be paid for will be measured by the cubic yard as computed from the measured area in place and the bedding thickness shown on the plans.

---

5. **PAYMENT**

The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit price bid for "Riprap" of the type, thickness, and void-filling technique (Dry, Grout, Mortar) specified, as applicable. This price is full compensation for furnishing, hauling, and placing riprap and for filter fabric, expansion joint material, concrete and reinforcing steel, grout and mortar, scales, test weights, equipment, labor, tools, and incidentals.

Payment for excavation of toe wall trenches, for all necessary excavation below natural ground or bottom of excavated channel, and for shaping of slopes for riprap will be included in the unit price bid per cubic yard of riprap.

When bedding is required for protection stone riprap, payment will be made at the unit price for "Bedding Material" of the thickness specified. This price is full compensation for furnishing, hauling, placing, and maintaining the bedding material until placement of the riprap cover is completed and accepted; excavation required for placement of bedding material; and equipment, scales, test weights, labor, tools, and incidentals. No payment will be made for excess thickness of bedding nor for material required to replace embankment material lost by rain wash, wind erosion, or otherwise.



Designation: D698 – 12<sup>2</sup>

## Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lbf/ft<sup>3</sup> (600 kN-m/m<sup>3</sup>))<sup>1</sup>

This standard is issued under the fixed designation D698; the number immediately following the designation indicates the year of original adoption or, in the case of revision, the year of last revision. A number in parentheses indicates the year of last reapproval. A superscript epsilon (<sup>ε</sup>) indicates an editorial change since the last revision or reapproval.

*This standard has been approved for use by agencies of the U.S. Department of Defense.*

<sup>ε</sup><sup>1</sup> NOTE—Editorial corrections made throughout in January 2014.

<sup>ε</sup><sup>2</sup> NOTE—Editorially corrected variable for [Eq A1.2](#) in July 2015.

### 1. Scope\*

1.1 These test methods cover laboratory compaction methods used to determine the relationship between molding water content and dry unit weight of soils (compaction curve) compacted in a 4 or 6-in. (101.6 or 152.4-mm) diameter mold with a 5.50-lbf (24.5-N) rammer dropped from a height of 12.0 in. (305 mm) producing a compactive effort of 12 400 ft-lbf/ft<sup>3</sup> (600 kN-m/m<sup>3</sup>).

NOTE 1—The equipment and procedures are similar as those proposed by R. R. Proctor (*Engineering News Record*—September 7, 1933) with this one major exception: his rammer blows were applied as “12 inch firm strokes” instead of free fall, producing variable compactive effort depending on the operator, but probably in the range 15 000 to 25 000 ft-lbf/ft<sup>3</sup> (700 to 1200 kN-m/m<sup>3</sup>). The standard effort test (see [3.1.4](#)) is sometimes referred to as the Proctor Test.

1.1.1 Soils and soil-aggregate mixtures are to be regarded as natural occurring fine- or coarse-grained soils, or composites or mixtures of natural soils, or mixtures of natural and processed soils or aggregates such as gravel or crushed rock. Hereafter referred to as either soil or material.

1.2 These test methods apply only to soils (materials) that have 30 % or less by mass of particles retained on the  $\frac{3}{4}$ -in. (19.0-mm) sieve and have not been previously compacted in the laboratory; that is, do not reuse compacted soil.

1.2.1 For relationships between unit weights and molding water contents of soils with 30 % or less by mass of material

retained on the  $\frac{3}{4}$ -in. (19.0-mm) sieve to unit weights and

molding water contents of the fraction passing  $\frac{3}{4}$ -in. (19.0-mm) sieve, see Practice [D4718](#).

1.3 Three alternative methods are provided. The method used shall be as indicated in the specification for the material

being tested. If no method is specified, the choice should be based on the material gradation.

1.3.1 *Method A:*

1.3.1.1 *Mold*—4-in. (101.6-mm) diameter.

1.3.1.2 *Material*—Passing No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve.

1.3.1.3 *Layers*—Three.

1.3.1.4 *Blows per Layer*—25.

1.3.1.5 *Usage*—May be used if 25 % or less (see [1.4](#)) by mass of the material is retained on the No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve.

1.3.1.6 *Other Usage*—If this gradation requirement cannot be met, then Method C may be used.

1.3.2 *Method B:*

1.3.2.1 *Mold*—4-in. (101.6-mm) diameter.

1.3.2.2 *Material*—Passing  $\frac{3}{8}$ -in. (9.5-mm) sieve.

1.3.2.3 *Layers*—Three.

1.3.2.4 *Blows per Layer*—25.

1.3.2.5 *Usage*—May be used if 25 % or less (see [1.4](#)) by mass of the material is retained on the  $\frac{3}{8}$ -in. (9.5-mm) sieve.

1.3.2.6 *Other Usage*—If this gradation requirement cannot be met, then Method C may be used.

1.3.3 *Method C:*

1.3.3.1 *Mold*—6-in. (152.4-mm) diameter.

1.3.3.2 *Material*—Passing  $\frac{3}{4}$ -in. (19.0-mm) sieve.

1.3.3.3 *Layers*—Three.

1.3.3.4 *Blows per Layer*—56.

1.3.3.5 *Usage*—May be used if 30 % or less (see [1.4](#)) by

mass of the material is retained on the  $\frac{3}{4}$ -in. (19.0-mm) sieve.

1.3.4 The 6-in. (152.4-mm) diameter mold shall not be used with Method A or B.

NOTE 2—Results have been found to vary slightly when a material is tested at the same compactive effort in different size molds, with the smaller mold size typically yielding larger values of density/unit weight ([1](#), pp. 21+).<sup>2</sup>

1.4 If the test specimen contains more than 5 % by mass of oversize fraction (coarse fraction) and the material will not be

<sup>1</sup> These Test Methods are under the jurisdiction of ASTM Committee [D18](#) on Soil and Rock and are the direct responsibility of Subcommittee [D18.03](#) on Texture, Plasticity and Density Characteristics of Soils.

Current edition approved May 1, 2012. Published June 2012. Originally approved in 1942. Last previous edition approved in 2000 as D698 – 07<sup>ε1</sup>. DOI: 10.1520/D0698-12E01.

<sup>2</sup> The boldface numbers in parentheses refer to the list of references at the end of this standard.

**\*A Summary of Changes section appears at the end of this standard**

Copyright © ASTM International, 100 Barr Harbor Drive, PO Box C700, West Conshohocken, PA 19428-2959. United States

Copyright by ASTM Int'l (all rights reserved); Thu Jun 11 16:16:21 EDT 2020 1

Downloaded/printed by

John Brown (Raba- Kistner Consultants, Inc) pursuant to License Agreement. No further reproductions authorized.

included in the test, corrections must be made to the unit mass and molding water content of the specimen or to the appropriate field-in-place density test specimen using Practice [D4718](#).

1.5 This test method will generally produce a well-defined maximum dry unit weight for non-free draining soils. If this test method is used for free-draining soils the maximum unit weight may not be well defined, and can be less than obtained using Test Methods [D4253](#).

1.6 All observed and calculated values shall conform to the guidelines for significant digits and rounding established in Practice [D6026](#), unless superseded by this standard.

1.6.1 For purposes of comparing measured or calculated value(s) with specified limits, the measured or calculated value(s) shall be rounded to the nearest decimal or significant digits in the specified limits.

1.6.2 The procedures used to specify how data are collected/recorded or calculated, in this standard are regarded as the industry standard. In addition, they are representative of the significant digits that generally should be retained. The procedures used do not consider material variation, purpose for obtaining the data, special purpose studies, or any considerations for the user's objectives; and it is common practice to increase or reduce significant digits of reported data to be commensurate with these considerations. It is beyond the scope of this standard to consider significant digits used in analytical methods for engineering design.

1.7 The values in inch-pound units are to be regarded as the standard. The values stated in SI units are provided for information only, except for units of mass. The units for mass are given in SI units only, g or kg.

1.7.1 It is common practice in the engineering profession to concurrently use pounds to represent both a unit of mass (lbm) and a force (lbf). This implicitly combines two separate systems of units; that is, the absolute system and the gravitational system. It is scientifically undesirable to combine the use of two separate sets of inch-pound units within a single standard. This standard has been written using the gravitational system of units when dealing with the inch-pound system. In this system, the pound (lbf) represents a unit of force (weight). However, the use of balances or scales recording pounds of mass (lbm) or the recording of density in lbm/ft<sup>3</sup> shall not be regarded as a nonconformance with this standard.

1.8 *This standard does not purport to address all of the safety concerns, if any, associated with its use. It is the responsibility of the user of this standard to establish appropriate safety and health practices and determine the applicability of regulatory limitations prior to use.*

## 2. Referenced Documents

### 2.1 ASTM Standards:<sup>3</sup>

[C127 Test Method for Relative Density \(Specific Gravity\) and Absorption of Coarse Aggregate](#)

[C136 Test Method for Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates](#)  
[D653 Terminology Relating to Soil, Rock, and Contained Fluids](#)  
[D854 Test Methods for Specific Gravity of Soil Solids by Water Pycnometer](#)  
[D2168 Practices for Calibration of Laboratory Mechanical-Rammer Soil Compactors](#)  
[D2216 Test Methods for Laboratory Determination of Water \(Moisture\) Content of Soil and Rock by Mass](#)  
[D2487 Practice for Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes \(Unified Soil Classification System\)](#)  
[D2488 Practice for Description and Identification of Soils \(Visual-Manual Procedure\)](#)  
[D3740 Practice for Minimum Requirements for Agencies Engaged in Testing and/or Inspection of Soil and Rock as Used in Engineering Design and Construction](#)  
[D4253 Test Methods for Maximum Index Density and Unit Weight of Soils Using a Vibratory Table](#)  
[D4718 Practice for Correction of Unit Weight and Water Content for Soils Containing Oversize Particles](#)  
[D4753 Guide for Evaluating, Selecting, and Specifying Balances and Standard Masses for Use in Soil, Rock, and Construction Materials Testing](#)  
[D4914 Test Methods for Density of Soil and Rock in Place by the Sand Replacement Method in a Test Pit](#)  
[D5030 Test Method for Density of Soil and Rock in Place by the Water Replacement Method in a Test Pit](#)  
[D6026 Practice for Using Significant Digits in Geotechnical Data](#)  
[D6913 Test Methods for Particle-Size Distribution \(Gradation\) of Soils Using Sieve Analysis](#)  
[E11 Specification for Woven Wire Test Sieve Cloth and Test Sieves](#)  
[E177 Practice for Use of the Terms Precision and Bias in ASTM Test Methods](#)  
[E691 Practice for Conducting an Interlaboratory Study to Determine the Precision of a Test Method](#)  
[IEEE/ASTM SI 10 Standard for Use of the International System of Units \(SI\): the Modern Metric System](#)

## 3. Terminology

### 3.1 Definitions:

3.1.1 See Terminology [D653](#) for general definitions.

3.1.2 *molding water content, n*—the adjusted water content of a soil (material) that will be compacted/reconstituted.

3.1.3 *standard effort*—in *compaction testing*, the term for the 12 400 ft-lbf/ft<sup>3</sup> (600 kN-m/m<sup>3</sup>) compactive effort applied by the equipment and methods of this test.

3.1.4 *standard maximum dry unit weight,  $\gamma_{d,max}$  in lbf/ft<sup>3</sup> (kN/m<sup>3</sup>)*—in *compaction testing*, the maximum value defined by the compaction curve for a compaction test using standard effort.

3.1.5 *standard optimum water content,  $w_{opt}$  in %*—in *compaction testing*, the molding water content at which a soil can be compacted to the maximum dry unit weight using standard compactive effort.

<sup>3</sup> For referenced ASTM standards, visit the ASTM website, [www.astm.org](http://www.astm.org), or contact ASTM Customer Service at [service@astm.org](mailto:service@astm.org). For *Annual Book of ASTM Standards* volume information, refer to the standard's Document Summary page on the ASTM website.

Copyright by ASTM Int'l (all rights reserved); Thu Jun 11 16:16:21 EDT 2020 2  
Downloaded/printed by

John Brown (Raba- Kistner Consultants, Inc) pursuant to License Agreement. No further reproductions authorized.

### 3.2 Definitions of Terms Specific to This Standard:

3.2.1 *oversize fraction (coarse fraction),  $P_C$  in %*—the portion of total specimen not used in performing the compaction test; it may be the portion of total specimen retained on the No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve in Method A,  $\frac{3}{8}$ -in. (9.5-mm) sieve in Method B, or  $\frac{3}{4}$ -in. (19.0-mm) sieve in Method C.

3.2.2 *test fraction (finer fraction),  $P_F$  in %*—the portion of the total specimen used in performing the compaction test; it is the fraction passing the No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve in Method A, passing the  $\frac{3}{8}$ -in. (9.5-mm) sieve in Method B, or passing the  $\frac{3}{4}$ -in. (19.0-mm) sieve in Method C.

## 4. Summary of Test Method

4.1 A soil at a selected molding water content is placed in three layers into a mold of given dimensions, with each layer compacted by 25 or 56 blows of a 5.50-lbf (24.47-N) rammer dropped from a distance of 12.00 in. (304.8 mm), subjecting the soil to a total compactive effort of about 12 400 ft-lbf/ft<sup>3</sup> (600 kN-m/m<sup>3</sup>). The resulting dry unit weight is determined. The procedure is repeated for a sufficient number of molding water contents to establish a relationship between the dry unit weight and the molding water content for the soil. This data, when plotted, represents a curvilinear relationship known as the compaction curve. The values of optimum water content and standard maximum dry unit weight are determined from the compaction curve.

## 5. Significance and Use

5.1 Soil placed as engineering fill (embankments, foundation pads, road bases) is compacted to a dense state to obtain satisfactory engineering properties such as, shear strength, compressibility, or permeability. In addition, foundation soils are often compacted to improve their engineering properties. Laboratory compaction tests provide the basis for determining the percent compaction and molding water content needed to achieve the required engineering properties, and for controlling construction to assure that the required compaction and water contents are achieved.

5.2 During design of an engineered fill, shear, consolidation, permeability, or other tests require preparation of test specimens by compacting at some molding water content to some unit weight. It is common practice to first determine the optimum water content ( $w_{opt}$ ) and maximum dry unit weight ( $\gamma_{d,max}$ ) by means of a compaction test. Test specimens are compacted at a selected molding water content ( $w$ ), either wet or dry of optimum ( $w_{opt}$ ) or at optimum ( $w_{opt}$ ), and at a selected dry unit weight related to a percentage of maximum dry unit weight ( $\gamma_{d,max}$ ). The selection of molding water content ( $w$ ), either wet or dry of optimum ( $w_{opt}$ ) or at optimum ( $w_{opt}$ ) and the dry unit weight ( $\gamma_{d,max}$ ) may be based on past experience, or a range of values may be investigated to determine the necessary percent of compaction.

5.3 Experience indicates that the methods outlined in 5.2 or the construction control aspects discussed in 5.1 are extremely difficult to implement or yield erroneous results when dealing with certain soils. 5.3.1 – 5.3.3 describe typical problem soils, the problems encountered when dealing with such soils and possible solutions for these problems.

5.3.1 *Oversize Fraction*—Soils containing more than 30 % oversize fraction (material retained on the  $\frac{3}{4}$ -in. (19-mm) sieve) are a problem. For such soils, there is no ASTM test method to control their compaction and very few laboratories are equipped to determine the laboratory maximum unit weight (density) of such soils (USDI Bureau of Reclamation, Denver, CO and U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Vicksburg, MS). Although Test Methods D4914 and D5030 determine the “field” dry unit weight of such soils, they are difficult and expensive to perform.

5.3.1.1 One method to design and control the compaction of such soils is to use a test fill to determine the required degree of compaction and the method to obtain that compaction, followed by use of a method specification to control the compaction. Components of a method specification typically contain the type and size of compaction equipment to be used, the lift thickness, acceptable range in molding water content, and the number of passes.

NOTE 3—Success in executing the compaction control of an earthwork project, especially when a method specification is used, is highly dependent upon the quality and experience of the contractor and inspector.

5.3.1.2 Another method is to apply the use of density correction factors developed by the USDI Bureau of Reclamation (2, 3) and U.S. Corps of Engineers (4). These correction factors may be applied for soils containing up to about 50 to 70 % oversize fraction. Each agency uses a different term for these density correction factors. The USDI Bureau of Reclamation uses  $D$  ratio (or  $D$ -VALUE), while the U.S. Corps of Engineers uses Density Interference Coefficient ( $I_c$ ).

5.3.1.3 The use of the replacement technique (Test Method D698–78, Method D), in which the oversize fraction is replaced with a finer fraction, is inappropriate to determine the maximum dry unit weight,  $\gamma_{d,max}$ , of soils containing oversize fractions (4).

5.3.2 *Degradation*—Soils containing particles that degrade during compaction are a problem, especially when more degradation occurs during laboratory compaction than field compaction, as is typical. Degradation typically occurs during the compaction of a granular-residual soil or aggregate. When degradation occurs, the maximum dry-unit weight increases (1, p. 73) so that the laboratory maximum value is not representative of field conditions. Often, in these cases, the maximum dry unit weight is impossible to achieve in the field.

5.3.2.1 Again, for soils subject to degradation, the use of test fills and method specifications may help. Use of replacement techniques is not correct.

5.3.3 *Gap Graded*—Gap-graded soils (soils containing many large particles with limited small particles) are a problem because the compacted soil will have larger voids than usual. To handle these large voids, standard test methods (laboratory or field) typically have to be modified using engineering judgement.

NOTE 4—The quality of the result produced by this standard is dependent on the competence of the personnel performing it, and the suitability of the equipment and facilities used. Agencies that meet the criteria of Practice D3740 are generally considered capable of competent and objective testing/sampling/inspection, and the like. Users of this standard are cautioned that compliance with Practice D3740 does not in itself assure reliable results. Reliable results depend on many factors;

Copyright by ASTM Int'l (all rights reserved); Thu Jun 11 16:16:21 EDT 2020 3  
Downloaded/printed by

John Brown (Raba- Kistner Consultants, Inc) pursuant to License Agreement. No further reproductions authorized.



Practice D3740 provides a means of evaluating some of those factors.

6. Apparatus

6.1 *Mold Assembly*—The molds shall be cylindrical in shape, made of rigid metal and be within the capacity and dimensions indicated in 6.1.1 or 6.1.2 and Figs. 1 and 2. See also Table 1. The walls of the mold may be solid, split, or tapered. The “split” type may consist of two half-round sections, or a section of pipe split along one element, which can be securely locked together to form a cylinder meeting the requirements of this section. The “tapered” type shall have an internal diameter taper that is uniform and not more than 0.200 in./ft (16.7 mm/m) of mold height. Each mold shall have a base plate and an extension collar assembly, both made of rigid metal and constructed so they can be securely attached and easily detached from the mold. The extension collar assembly shall have a height extending above the top of the mold of at least 2.0 in. (51 mm) which may include an upper section that flares out to form a funnel, provided there is at least a 0.75 in. (19 mm) straight cylindrical section beneath it. The extension collar shall align with the inside of the mold. The bottom of the base plate and bottom of the centrally recessed area that accepts the cylindrical mold shall be planar within 60.005 in. (60.1 mm).

6.1.1 *Mold, 4 in.*—A mold having a 4.000  $\pm$  0.016-in. (101.6  $\pm$  0.4-mm) average inside diameter, a height of 4.584  $\pm$  0.018 in. (116.4  $\pm$  0.5 mm) and a volume of 0.0333  $\pm$  0.0005 ft<sup>3</sup> (943.0  $\pm$  14 cm<sup>3</sup>). A mold assembly having the minimum required features is shown in Fig. 1.

6.1.2 *Mold, 6 in.*—A mold having a 6.000  $\pm$  0.026-in. (152.4  $\pm$  0.7-mm) average inside diameter, a height of 4.584  $\pm$  0.018 in. (116.4  $\pm$  0.5 mm), and a volume of 0.0750  $\pm$  0.0009 ft<sup>3</sup> (2124  $\pm$  25 cm<sup>3</sup>). A mold assembly having the minimum required features is shown in Fig. 2.

6.2 *Rammer*—A rammer, either manually operated as described further in 6.2.1 or mechanically operated as described in 6.2.2. The rammer shall fall freely through a distance of 12.00  $\pm$  0.05 in. (304.8  $\pm$  1 mm) from the surface of the specimen. The weight of the rammer shall be 5.50  $\pm$  0.02 lbf (24.47  $\pm$  0.09 N, or mass of 2.495  $\pm$  0.009 kg), except that the weight of the mechanical rammers may be adjusted as described in Practices D2168; see Note 5. The striking face of the rammer shall be planar and circular, except as noted in 6.2.2.1,

As an option to the full length stud, a 2 1/2" x 3/8" stud may be used. Then as an alternative construction, the collar may be held down with a slotted bracket attached to the collar and a pin in the mold.

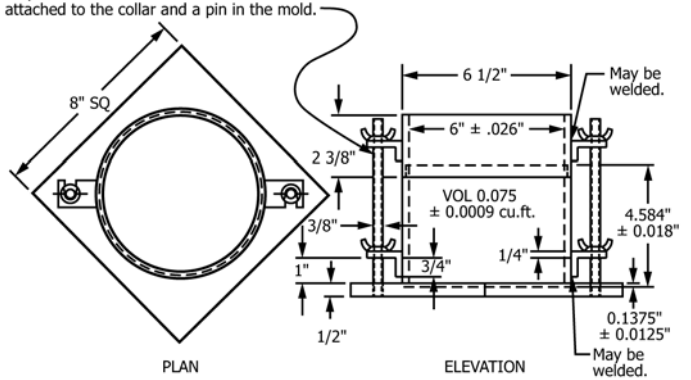


FIG. 2 6.0-in. Cylindrical Mold

TABLE 1 Metric Equivalents for Figs. 1 and 2

in.	mm
0.016	0.41
0.026	0.66
0.032	0.81
0.028	0.71
1/2	12.70
2 1/2	63.50
2 5/8	66.70
4	101.60
4 1/2	114.30
4.584	116.43
4 3/4	120.60
6	152.40
6 1/2	165.10
6 5/8	168.30
6 3/4	171.40
8 1/4	209.60
ft <sup>3</sup>	cm <sup>3</sup>
1/30 (0.0333)	943
0.0005	14
(0.0750)	2,124
0.0011	31

with a diameter when new of 2.000  $\pm$  0.005 in. (50.80  $\pm$  0.13 mm). The rammer shall be replaced if the striking face becomes worn or bellied to the extent that the diameter exceeds 2.000  $\pm$  0.01 in. (50.80  $\pm$  0.25 mm).

NOTE 5—It is a common and acceptable practice to determine the weight of the rammer using either a kilogram or pound balance and assume 1 lbf is equivalent to 0.4536 kg, 1 lbf is equivalent to 1 lbm, or 1 N is equivalent to 0.2248 lbf or 0.1020 kg.

6.2.1 *Manual Rammer*—The rammer shall be equipped with a guide sleeve that has sufficient clearance that the free fall of the rammer shaft and head is not restricted. The guide sleeve shall have at least four vent holes at each end (eight holes total) located with centers 3/4  $\pm$  1/16 in. (19  $\pm$  2 mm) from each end and spaced 90 degrees apart. The minimum diameter of the vent holes shall be 3/8 in. (9.5 mm). Additional holes or slots may be incorporated in the guide sleeve.

6.2.2 *Mechanical Rammer-Circular Face*—The rammer shall operate mechanically in such a manner as to provide uniform and complete coverage of the specimen surface. There shall be 0.10  $\pm$  0.03-in. (2.5  $\pm$  0.8-mm) clearance between the rammer and the inside surface of the mold at its smallest

As an option to the full length stud, a 2 1/2" x 3/8" stud may be used. Then as an alternative construction, the collar may be held down with a slotted bracket attached to the collar and a pin in the mold.

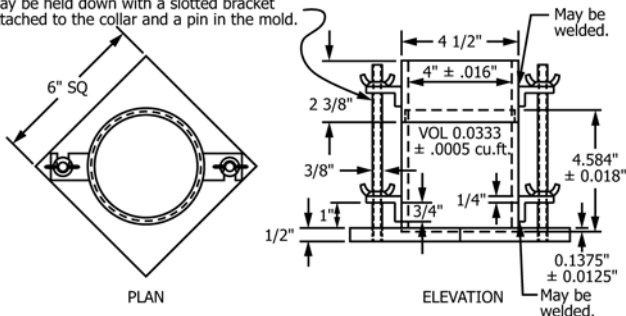


FIG. 1 4.0-in. Cylindrical Mold

Copyright by ASTM Int'l (all rights reserved); Thu Jun 11 16:16:21 EDT 2020 4  
Downloaded/printed by

John Brown (Raba- Kistner Consultants, Inc) pursuant to License Agreement. No further reproductions authorized.

diameter. The mechanical rammer shall meet the standardization/calibration requirements of Practices D2168. The mechanical rammer shall be equipped with a positive mechanical means to support the rammer when not in operation.

6.2.2.1 *Mechanical Rammer-Sector Face*—The sector face can be used with the 6-in. (152.4-mm) mold, as an alternative to the circular face mechanical rammer described in 6.2.2. The striking face shall have the shape of a sector of a circle of radius equal to 2.90 ± 0.02 in. (73.7 ± 0.5 mm) and an area about the same as the circular face, see 6.2. The rammer shall operate in such a manner that the vertex of the sector is positioned at the center of the specimen and follow the compaction pattern given in Fig. 3b.

6.3 *Sample Extruder (optional)*—A jack, with frame or other device adapted for the purpose of extruding compacted specimens from the mold.

6.4 *Balance*—A Class GP5 balance meeting the requirements of Guide D4753 for a balance of 1-g readability. If the water content of the compacted specimens is determined using a representative portion of the specimen, rather than the whole specimen, and if the representative portion is less than 1000 g, a Class GP2 balance having a 0.1-g readability is needed in order to comply with Test Methods D2216 requirements for determining water content to 0.1 %.

NOTE 6—Use of a balance having an equivalent capacity and a readability of 0.002 lbm as an alternative to a class GP5 balance should not be regarded as nonconformance to this standard.

6.5 *Drying Oven*—Thermostatically controlled oven, capable of maintaining a uniform temperature of 230 ± 9°F (110 ± 5°C) throughout the drying chamber. These requirements typically require the use of a forced-draft type oven. Preferably the oven should be vented outside the building.

6.6 *Straightedge*—A stiff metal straightedge of any convenient length but not less than 10 in. (250 mm). The total length of the straightedge shall be machined straight to a tolerance of 60.005 in. (60.1 mm). The scraping edge shall be beveled if it is thicker than 1/8 in. (3 mm).

6.7 *Sieves*—3/4 in. (19.0 mm), 3/8 in. (9.5 mm), and No. 4 (4.75 mm), conforming to the requirements of Specification E11.

6.8 *Mixing Tools*—Miscellaneous tools such as mixing pan, spoon, trowel, spatula, spraying device (to add water evenly),

and (preferably, but optional) suitable mechanical device for thoroughly mixing the subspecimen of soil with increments of water.

7. Standardization/Calibration

7.1 Perform standardizations before initial use, after repairs or other occurrences that might affect the test results, at intervals not exceeding 1,000 test specimens, or annually, whichever occurs first, for the following apparatus:

7.1.1 *Balance*—Evaluate in accordance with Guide D4753.

7.1.2 *Molds*—Determine the volume as described in Annex A1.

7.1.3 *Manual Rammer*—Verify the free fall distance, rammer weight, and rammer face are in accordance with 6.2. Verify the guide sleeve requirements are in accordance with 6.2.1.

7.1.4 *Mechanical Rammer*—Verify and adjust if necessary that the mechanical rammer is in accordance with Practices D2168. In addition, the clearance between the rammer and the inside surface of the mold shall be verified in accordance with 6.2.2.

8. Test Specimen

8.1 The minimum specimen (test fraction) mass for Methods A and B is about 16 kg, and for Method C is about 29 kg of dry soil. Therefore, the field sample should have a moist mass of at least 23 kg and 45 kg, respectively. Greater masses would be required if the oversize fraction is large (see 10.2 or 10.3) or an additional molding water content is taken during compaction of each point (see 10.4.2.1).

8.2 If gradation data is not available, estimate the percentage of material (by mass) retained on the No. 4 (4.75-mm), 3/8-in. (9.5-mm), or 3/4-in. (19.0-mm) sieve as appropriate for selecting Method A, B, or C, respectively. If it appears the percentage retained of interest is close to the allowable value for a given Method (A, B, or C), then either:

8.2.1 Select a Method that allows a higher percentage retained (B or C).

8.2.2 Using the Method of interest, process the specimen in accordance with 10.2 or 10.3, this determines the percentage retained for that method. If acceptable, proceed, if not go to the next Method (B or C).

8.2.3 Determine percentage retained values by using a representative portion from the total sample, and performing a simplified or complete gradation analysis using the sieve(s) of

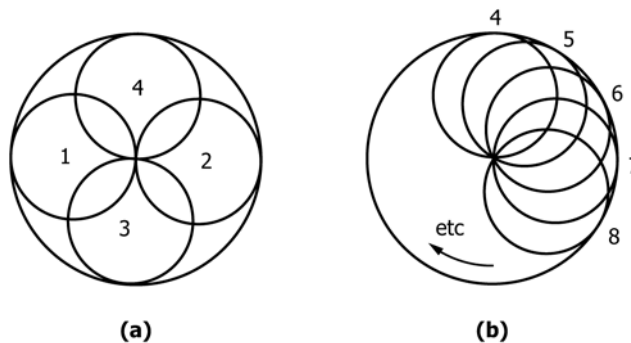


FIG. 3 Rammer Pattern for Compaction in 4 in. (101.6 mm) Mold

Copyright by ASTM Int'l (all rights reserved); Thu Jun 11 16:16:21 EDT 2020 5  
Downloaded/printed by  
John Brown (Raba- Kistner Consultants, Inc) pursuant to License Agreement. No further reproductions authorized.

interest and Test Methods **D6913** or **C136**. It is only necessary to calculate the retained percentage(s) for the sieve or sieves for which information is desired.

## 9. Preparation of Apparatus

9.1 Select the proper compaction mold(s), collar, and base plate in accordance with the Method (A, B, or C) being used. Check that its volume is known and determined with or without base plate, free of nicks or dents, and will fit together properly.

NOTE 7—Mass requirements are given in **10.4**.

9.2 Check that the manual or mechanical rammer assembly is in good working condition and that parts are not loose or worn. Make any necessary adjustments or repairs. If adjustments or repairs are made, the rammer must be re-standardized.

## 10. Procedure

### 10.1 Soils:

10.1.1 Do not reuse soil that has been previously compacted in the laboratory. The reuse of previously compacted soil yields a significantly greater maximum dry unit weight (**1**, p. 31).

10.1.2 When using this test method for soils containing hydrated halloysite, or in which past experience indicates that results will be altered by air-drying, use the moist preparation method (see **10.2**). In referee testing, each laboratory has to use the same method of preparation, either moist (preferred) or air-dried.

10.1.3 Prepare the soil specimens for testing in accordance with **10.2** (preferred) or with **10.3**.

10.2 *Moist Preparation Method (preferred)*—Without previously drying the sample/specimen, process it over a No. 4 (4.75-mm),  $\frac{3}{8}$ -in. (9.5-mm), or  $\frac{3}{4}$ -in. (19.0-mm) sieve, depending on the Method (A, B, or C) being used or required as covered in **8.2**. For additional processing details, see Test Methods **D6913**. Determine and record the mass of both the retained and passing portions (oversize fraction and test fraction, respectively) to the nearest g. Oven dry the oversize fraction and determine and record its dry mass to the nearest g. If it appears more than 0.5 % of the total dry mass of the specimen is adhering to the oversize fraction, wash that fraction. Then determine and record its oven dry mass to the nearest g. Determine and record the water content of the processed soil (test fraction). Using that water content, determine and record the oven dry mass of the test fraction to the nearest g. Based on these oven dry masses, the percent oversize

fraction,  $P_C$ , and test fraction,  $P_F$ , shall be determined and recorded, unless a gradation analysis has already been performed, see Section **11** on Calculations.

10.2.1 From the test fraction, select and prepare at least four (preferably five) subspecimens having molding water contents such that they bracket the estimated optimum water content. A subspecimen having a molding water content close to optimum should be prepared first by trial additions or removals of water and mixing (see **Note 8**). Select molding water contents for the rest of the subspecimens to provide at least two subspecimens wet and two subspecimens dry of optimum, and molding water contents varying by about 2 %. At least two molding water contents are necessary on the wet and dry side of optimum to define the dry-unit-weight compaction curve (see **10.5**). Some

soils with very high optimum water content or a relatively flat compaction curve may require larger molding water content increments to obtain a well-defined maximum dry unit weight. Molding water content increments should not exceed about 4 %.

NOTE 8—With practice it is usually possible to visually judge a point near optimum water content. Typically, cohesive soils at the optimum water content can be squeezed into a lump that sticks together when hand pressure is released, but will break cleanly into two sections when “bent.” They tend to crumble at molding water contents dry of optimum; while, they tend to stick together in a sticky cohesive mass wet of optimum. The optimum water content is typically slightly less than the plastic limit. While for cohesionless soils, the optimum water content is typically close to zero or at the point where bleeding occurs.

10.2.2 Thoroughly mix the test fraction, then using a scoop select representative soil for each subspecimen (compaction point). Select about 2.3 kg when using Method A or B, or about 5.9 kg for Method C. Test Methods **D6913** section on Specimen and Annex A2 gives additional details on obtaining representative soil using this procedure and why it is the preferred method. To obtain the subspecimen’s molding water contents selected in **10.2.1**, add or remove the required amounts of water as follows. To add water, spray it into the soil during mixing; to remove water, allow the soil to dry in air at ambient temperature or in a drying apparatus such that the temperature of the sample does not exceed 140°F (60°C). Mix the soil frequently during drying to facilitate an even water content distribution. Thoroughly mix each subspecimen to facilitate even distribution of water throughout and then place in a separate covered container to stand (cure) in accordance with **Table 2** prior to compaction. For selecting a standing time, the soil may be classified using Practice **D2487**, Practice **D2488**, or data on other samples from the same material source. For referee testing, classification shall be by Practice **D2487**.

10.3 *Dry Preparation Method*—If the sample/specimen is too damp to be friable, reduce the water content by air drying until the material is friable. Drying may be in air or by the use of drying apparatus such that the temperature of the sample does not exceed 140°F (60°C). Thoroughly break up the aggregations in such a manner as to avoid breaking individual particles. Process the material over the appropriate sieve: No. 4 (4.75-mm),  $\frac{3}{8}$ -in. (9.5-mm), or  $\frac{3}{4}$ -in. (19.0-mm). When preparing the material by passing over the  $\frac{3}{4}$ -in. sieve for compaction in the 6-in. mold, break up aggregations suffi-

ciently to at least pass the  $\frac{3}{8}$ -in. sieve in order to facilitate the distribution of water throughout the soil in later mixing. Determine and record the water content of the test fraction and all masses covered in **10.2**, as applicable to determine the percent oversize fraction,  $P_C$ , and test fraction,  $P_F$ .

10.3.1 From the test fraction, select and prepare at least four (preferably five) subspecimens in accordance with **10.2.1** and

**TABLE 2 Required Standing Times of Moisturized Specimens**

Classification	Minimum Standing Time, h
GW, GP, SW, SP	No Requirement
GM, SM	3
All other soils	16

Copyright by ASTM Int'l (all rights reserved); Thu Jun 11 16:16:21 EDT 2020 6  
Downloaded/printed by

John Brown (Raba- Kistner Consultants, Inc) pursuant to License Agreement. No further reproductions authorized.

10.2.2, except for the following: Use either a mechanical splitting or quartering process to obtain the subspecimens. As stated in Test Methods D6913, both of these processes will yield non-uniform subspecimens compared to the moist procedure. Typically, only the addition of water to each subspecimen will be required.

10.4 *Compaction*—After standing (curing), if required, each subspecimen (compaction point) shall be compacted as follows:

10.4.1 Determine and record the mass of the mold or mold and base plate, see 10.4.7.

10.4.2 Assemble and secure the mold and collar to the base plate. Check the alignment of the inner wall of the mold and mold extension collar. Adjust if necessary. The mold shall rest, without wobbling/rocking on a uniform rigid foundation, such as provided by a cylinder or cube of concrete with a weight or mass of not less than 200-lbf or 91-kg, respectively. Secure the base plate to the rigid foundation. The method of attachment to the rigid foundation shall allow easy removal of the assembled mold, collar and base plate after compaction is completed.

10.4.2.1 During compaction, it is advantageous but not required to determine the water content of each subspecimen. This provides a check on the molding water content determined for each compaction point and the magnitude of bleeding, see 10.4.9. However, more soil will have to be selected for each subspecimen than stated in 10.2.2.

10.4.3 Compact the soil in three layers. After compaction, each layer should be approximately equal in thickness and extend into the collar. Prior to compaction, place the loose soil into the mold and spread into a layer of uniform thickness. Lightly tamp the soil prior to compaction until it is not in a fluffy or loose state, using either the manual rammer or a 26-in. (506-mm) diameter cylinder. Following compaction of each of the first two layers, any soil that has not been

compacted; such as adjacent to the mold walls or extends above the compacted surface (up the mold walls) shall be trimmed. The trimmed soil shall be discarded. A knife or other suitable device may be used. The total amount of soil used shall be such that the third compacted layer slightly extends into the collar, but does not extend more than approximately ¼-in. (6-mm) above the top of the mold. If the third layer does extend above this limit, then the compaction point shall be discarded. In addition, the compaction point shall be discarded when the last blow on the rammer for the third layer results in the bottom of the rammer extending below the top of the compaction mold; unless the soil is pliable enough, that this surface can easily be forced above the top of the compaction mold during trimming (see Note 9).

10.4.4 Compact each layer with 25 blows for the 4-in. (101.6-mm) mold or with 56 blows for the 6-in. (152.4-mm) mold. The manual rammer shall be used for referee testing.

10.4.5 In operating the manual rammer, take care to avoid lifting the guide sleeve during the rammer upstroke. Hold the guide sleeve steady and within 5° of vertical. Apply the blows at a uniform rate of about 25 blows/min and in such a manner as to provide complete, uniform coverage of the specimen surface. When using a 4-in. (101.6-mm) mold and manual rammer, follow the blow pattern given in Fig. 3a and Fig. 3b; while for a mechanical rammer, follow the pattern in Fig. 3b. When using a 6-in. (152.4-mm) mold and manual rammer, follow the blow pattern given in Fig. 4 up to the 9th blow, then systematically around the mold (Fig. 3b) and in the middle. When using a 6-in. (152.4-mm) mold and a mechanical rammer equipped with a sector face, the mechanical rammer shall be designed to follow the compaction pattern given in Fig. 3b. When using a 6-in. (152.4-mm) mold and a mechanical rammer equipped with a circular face, the mechanical rammer shall be designed to distribute the blows uniformly over the

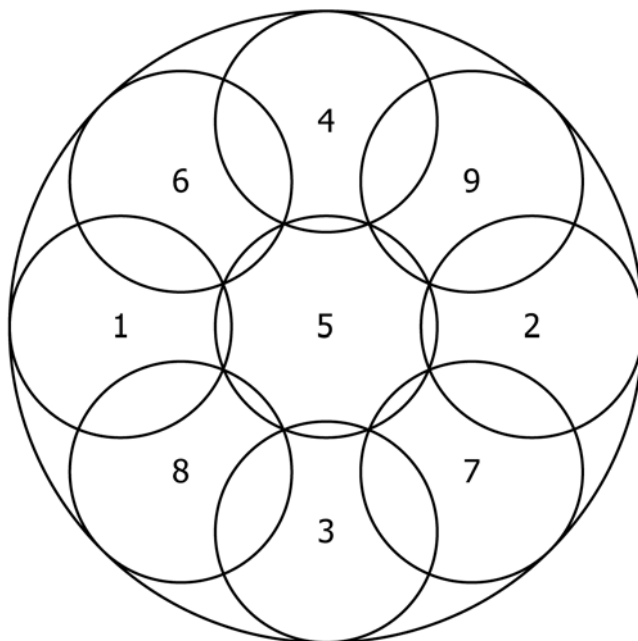


FIG. 4 Rammer Pattern for Compaction in 6 in. (152.4 mm) Mold

Copyright by ASTM Int'l (all rights reserved); Thu Jun 11 16:16:21 EDT 2020 7

Downloaded/printed by

John Brown (Raba- Kistner Consultants, Inc) pursuant to License Agreement. No further reproductions authorized.



surface of the specimen. If the surface of the compacted soil becomes highly uneven (see [Note 9](#)), then adjust the pattern to follow the logic given in [Fig. 3a](#) or [Fig. 4](#). This will most likely void the use of a mechanical rammer for such compaction points.

**NOTE 9**—When compacting specimens wetter than optimum water content, uneven compacted surfaces can occur and operator judgement is required as to the average height of the specimen and rammer pattern during compaction.

10.4.6 Following compaction of the last layer, remove the collar and base plate (except as noted in [10.4.7](#)) from the mold. A knife may be used to trim the soil adjacent to the collar to loosen the soil from the collar before removal to avoid disrupting the soil below the top of the mold. In addition, to

prevent/reduce soil sticking to the collar or base plate, rotate them before removal.

10.4.7 Carefully trim the compacted specimen even with the top of the mold by means of the straightedge scraped across the

top of the mold to form a plane surface even with the top of the mold. Initial trimming of the specimen above the top of the mold with a knife may prevent the soil from tearing below the top of the mold. Fill any holes in the top surface with unused or trimmed soil from the specimen, press in with the fingers, and again scrape the straightedge across the top of the mold. If gravel size particles are encountered, trim around them or

remove them, whichever is the easiest and reduces the disturbance of the compacted soil. The estimated volume of particles above the surface of the compacted soil and holes in that

surface shall be equal, fill in remaining holes as mentioned above. Repeat the appropriate preceding operations on the bottom of the specimen when the mold volume was determined without the base plate. For very wet or dry soils, soil or water may be lost if the base plate is removed. For these situations, leave the base plate attached to the mold. When the base plate

is left attached, the volume of the mold must be calibrated with the base plate attached to the mold rather than a plastic or glass plate as noted in [Annex A1, A1.4](#).

10.4.8 Determine and record the mass of the specimen and mold to the nearest g. When the base plate is left attached, determine and record the mass of the specimen, mold and base plate to the nearest g.

10.4.9 Remove the material from the mold. Obtain a specimen for molding water content by using either the whole specimen (preferred method) or a representative portion. When the entire specimen is used, break it up to facilitate drying. Otherwise, obtain a representative portion of the three layers, removing enough material from the specimen to report the water content to 0.1 %. The mass of the representative portion of soil shall conform to the requirements of Table 1, Method B,

of Test Methods [D2216](#). Determine the molding water content in accordance with Test Methods [D2216](#).

10.5 Following compaction of the last specimen, compare

compacted specimens will be required. Generally, for experienced plotters of compaction curves, one compaction point wet of the optimum water content is adequate to define the maximum wet unit weight, see [11.2](#).

## 11. Calculations and Plotting (Compaction Curve)

11.1 *Fraction Percentages*—If gradation data from Test Methods [D6913](#) is not available, calculate the dry mass of the test fraction, percentage of oversize fraction and test fraction as covered below and using the data from [10.2](#) or [10.3](#):

11.1.1 *Test Fraction*—Determine the dry mass of the test fraction as follows:

$$M_{d,tf} = \frac{M}{5} \frac{m_{tf}}{11 \frac{w_{tf}}{100}} \quad (1)$$

where:

- $M_{d,tf}$  = dry mass of test fraction, nearest g or 0.001 kg,
- $M_{m,tf}$  = moist mass of test fraction, nearest g or 0.001 kg, and
- $w_{tf}$  = water content of test fraction, nearest 0.1 %.

11.1.2 *Oversize Fraction Percentage*—Determine the oversize (coarse) fraction percentage as follows:

$$P_C = 5 \frac{M_{d,of}}{M_{d,of} + M_{d,tf}} \quad (2)$$

where:

- $P_C$  = percentage of oversize (coarse) fraction, nearest %, and
- $M_{d,of}$  = dry mass of oversize fraction, nearest g or 0.001 kg,

11.1.3 *Test Fraction Percentage*—Determine the test (finer) fraction percentage as follows:

$$P_F = 100 - P_C \quad (3)$$

where:

- $P_F$  = percentage of test (finer) fraction, nearest %.

11.2 *Density and Unit Weight*—Calculate the molding water content, moist density, dry density, and dry unit weight of each compacted specimen as explained below.

11.2.1 *Molding Water Content, w*—Calculate in accordance with Test Methods [D2216](#) to nearest 0.1 %.

11.2.2 *Density and Unit Weights*—Calculate the moist (total) density ([Eq 4](#)), the dry density ([Eq 5](#)), and then the dry unit weight ([Eq 6](#)) as follows:

11.2.2.1 *Moist Density:*

$$\rho_m = \frac{M}{V} \quad (4)$$

where:

the wet unit weights to ensure that a desired pattern of obtaining data on each side of the optimum water content will be attained for the dry-unit-weight compaction curve. Plotting the wet unit weight and molding water content of each compacted specimen can be an aid in making the above evaluation. If the desired pattern is not obtained, additional

- $\rho_m$  = moist density of compacted subspecimen (compaction point), four significant digits, g/cm<sup>3</sup> or kg/m<sup>3</sup>,
- $M_t$  = mass of moist soil in mold and mold, nearest g,
- $M_{md}$  = mass of compaction mold, nearest g,
- $V$  = volume of compaction mold, cm<sup>3</sup> or m<sup>3</sup> (see [Annex A1](#)), and

Copyright by ASTM Int'l (all rights reserved); Thu Jun 11 16:16:21 EDT 2020 8  
Downloaded/printed by

John Brown (Raba- Kistner Consultants, Inc) pursuant to License Agreement. No further reproductions authorized.

$K$  = conversion constant, depending on density units and volume units.

Use 1 for  $\text{g}/\text{cm}^3$  and volume in  $\text{cm}^3$ .

Use 1000 for  $\text{g}/\text{cm}^3$  and volume in  $\text{m}^3$ .

Use 0.001 for  $\text{kg}/\text{cm}^3$  and volume in  $\text{m}^3$ .

Use 1000 for  $\text{kg}/\text{m}^3$  and volume in  $\text{cm}^3$ .

11.2.2.2 Dry Density:

$$\rho_d = \frac{\rho_m}{1+w} \quad (5)$$

100

where:

$\rho_d$  = dry density of compaction point, four significant digits,  $\text{g}/\text{cm}^3$  or  $\text{kg}/\text{m}^3$ , and

$w$  = molding water content of compaction point, nearest 0.1 %.

11.2.2.3 Dry Unit Weight:

$$\gamma_d = K_1 \rho_d \quad \text{in lbf/ft}^3 \quad (6)$$

or

$$\gamma_d = K_2 \rho_d \quad \text{in kN/m}^3 \quad (7)$$

where:

$\gamma_d$  = dry unit weight of compacted specimen, four significant digits, in  $\text{lbf}/\text{ft}^3$  or  $\text{kN}/\text{m}^3$ ,

$K_1$  = conversion constant, depending on density units,  
Use 62.428 for density in  $\text{g}/\text{cm}^3$ , or  
Use 0.062428 for density in  $\text{kg}/\text{m}^3$ ,

$K_2$  = conversion constant, depending on density units,  
Use 9.8066 for density in  $\text{g}/\text{cm}^3$ , or  
Use 0.0098066 for density in  $\text{kg}/\text{m}^3$ .

11.3 Compaction Curve—Plot the dry unit weight and molding water content values, the saturation curve (see 11.3.2), and draw the compaction curve as a smooth curve through the points (see example, Fig. 5). For each point on the compaction curve, calculate, record, and plot dry unit weight to the nearest 0.1  $\text{lbf}/\text{ft}^3$  (0.02  $\text{kN}/\text{m}^3$ ) and molding water content to the nearest 0.1 %. From the compaction curve, determine the compaction results: optimum water content, to nearest 0.1 % and maximum dry unit weight, to the nearest 0.1  $\text{lbf}/\text{ft}^3$  (0.02  $\text{kN}/\text{m}^3$ ). If more than 5 % by mass of oversize material was removed from the sample/specimen, calculate the corrected optimum water content and maximum dry unit weight of the total material using Practice D4718. This correction may be made to the appropriate field in-place density test specimen rather than to the laboratory compaction results.

11.3.1 In these plots, the scale sensitivities should remain the same, that is the change in molding water content or dry unit weight per division is constant between plots. Typically, the change in dry unit weight per division is twice that of molding water content's (2  $\text{lbf}/\text{ft}^3$  to 1 %  $w$  per major division).

Therefore, any change in the shape of the compaction curve is a result of testing different material, not the plotting scale. However, a one to one ratio should be used for soils that have

COMPACTION TEST

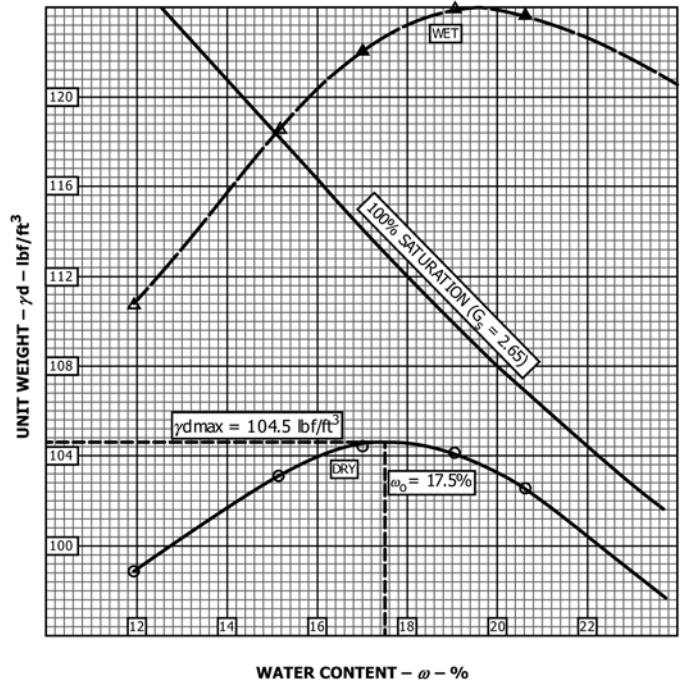


FIG. 5 Example Compaction Curve Plotting

11.3.1.1 The shape of the compaction curve on the wet side of optimum should typically follow that of the saturation curve. The shape of the compaction curve on the dry side of optimum may be relatively flat or up and down when testing some soils, such as relatively free draining ones or plastic soils prepared using the moist procedure and having molding water contents close to or less than the shrinkage limit.

11.3.2 Plot the 100 % saturation curve, based on either an estimated or a measured specific gravity. Values of water content for the condition of 100 % saturation can be calculated as explained in 11.4 (see example, Fig. 5).

NOTE 10—The 100 % saturation curve is an aid in drawing the compaction curve. For soils containing more than about 10 % fines and molding water contents well above optimum, the two curves generally become roughly parallel with the wet side of the compaction curve between 92 to 95 % saturation. Theoretically, the compaction curve cannot plot to the right of the 100 % saturation curve. If it does, there is an error in specific gravity, in measurements, in calculations, in testing, or in plotting. The 100 % saturation curve is sometimes referred to as the zero air voids curve or the complete saturation curve.

11.4 Saturation Points—To calculate points for plotting the 100 % saturation curve or zero air voids curve, select values of dry unit weight, calculate corresponding values of water content corresponding to the condition of 100 % saturation as follows:

$$w \sim \frac{G_s - 1}{G_s} \gamma_d$$

$$w_{sat} = \frac{G_s - 1}{G_s} \gamma_d \quad (8)$$

where:

a relatively flat compaction curve (see 10.2.1), such as highly plastic soils or relatively free draining ones up to the point of bleeding.

$w_{sat}$  = water content for complete saturation, nearest 0.1 %,  
 $\gamma_w$  = unit weight of water, 62.32 lbf/ft<sup>3</sup> (9.789 kN/m<sup>3</sup>) at 20°C,

Copyright by ASTM Int'l (all rights reserved); Thu Jun 11 16:16:21 EDT 2020 9  
Downloaded/printed by  
John Brown (Raba- Kistner Consultants, Inc) pursuant to License Agreement. No further reproductions authorized.

$\gamma_d$  = dry unit weight of soil, lbf/ft<sup>3</sup> (kN/m<sup>3</sup>), three significant digits, and

$G_s$  = specific gravity of soil (estimated or measured), to nearest 0.01 value, see 11.4.1.

11.4.1 Specific gravity may be estimated for the test fraction based on test data from other soils having the same soil classification and source or experience. Otherwise, a specific gravity test (Test Methods C127 or D854, or both) is necessary.

## 12. Report: Data Sheet(s)/Form(s)

12.1 The methodology used to specify how data are recorded on the test data sheet(s)/form(s), as described below, is covered in 1.6.

12.2 The data sheet(s)/form(s) shall contain as a minimum the following information:

12.2.1 Method used (A, B, or C).

12.2.2 Preparation method used (moist or dry).

12.2.3 As received water content if determined, nearest 1 %.

12.2.4 Standard optimum water content, Std- $w_{opt}$  to nearest 0.1 %.

12.2.5 Standard maximum dry unit weight, Std- $\gamma_{d,max}$  nearest 0.1 lbf/ft<sup>3</sup> or 0.02 kN/m<sup>3</sup>.

12.2.6 Type of rammer (manual or mechanical).

12.2.7 Soil sieve data when applicable for selection of Method (A, B, or C) used.

12.2.8 Description of sample used in test (as a minimum, color and group name and symbol), by Practice D2488, or classification by Practice D2487.

12.2.9 Specific gravity and method of determination, nearest 0.01 value.

12.2.10 Identification of sample used in test; for example, project number/name, location, depth, and the like.

12.2.11 Compaction curve plot showing compaction points used to establish compaction curve, and 100 % saturation curve, value or point of maximum dry unit weight and optimum water content.

12.2.12 Percentages for the fractions retained ( $P_C$ ) and passing ( $P_F$ ) the sieve used in Method A, B, or C, nearest 1 %. In addition, if compaction data (Std- $w_{opt}$  and Std- $\gamma_{d,max}$ ) are corrected for the oversize fraction, include that data.

## 13. Precision and Bias

13.1 *Precision*—Criteria for judging the acceptability of test results obtained by these test methods on a range of soil types are given in Tables 3 and 4. These estimates of precision are based on the results of the interlaboratory program conducted by the ASTM Reference Soils and Testing Program.<sup>4</sup> In this program, Method A and the Dry Preparation Method were used. In addition, some laboratories performed three replicate tests per soil type (triplicate test laboratory), while other laboratories performed a single test per soil type (single test laboratory). A description of the soils tested is given in 13.1.4. The precision estimates vary with soil type, and may vary with

TABLE 3 Summary of Test Results from Triplicate Test Laboratories (Standard Effort Compaction)

(1) Number of Triplicate Test Labs			(2) Test Value <sup>A</sup> (Units)	(3) Average Value <sup>B</sup>			(4) Standard Deviation <sup>C</sup>			(5) Acceptable Range of Two Results <sup>D,E</sup>		
<i>Soil Type:</i>												
CH	CL	ML		CH	CL	ML	CH	CL	ML	CH	CL	ML
<i>Single-Operator Results (Within-Laboratory Repeatability):</i>												
11	12	11	$\gamma_{d,max}$ (pcf)	97.2	109.2	106.3	0.5	0.4	0.5	1.3	1.2	1.3
11	12	11	$w_{opt}$ (%)	22.8	16.6	17.1	0.2	0.3	0.3	0.7	0.9	0.9
<i>Multilaboratory Results (Between-Laboratory Reproducibility):</i>												
11	12	11	$\gamma_{d,max}$ (pcf)	97.2	109.2	106.3	1.4	0.8	0.6	3.9	2.3	1.6
11	12	11	$w_{opt}$ (%)	22.8	16.6	17.1	0.7	0.5	0.5	1.8	1.5	1.3

<sup>A</sup>  $\gamma_{d,max}$  (pcf) = standard maximum dry unit weight in lbf/ft<sup>3</sup> and  $w_{opt}$  (%) = standard optimum water in percent.

<sup>B</sup> The number of significant digits and decimal places presented are representative of the input data. In accordance with Practice D6026, the standard deviation and acceptable range of results can not have more decimal places than the input data.

<sup>C</sup> Standard deviation is calculated in accordance with Practice E691 and is referred to as the 1 s limit.

<sup>D</sup> Acceptable range of two results is referred to as the d2s limit. It is calculated as  $1.960 \sigma \sqrt{2} \cdot 1s$ , as defined by Practice E177. The difference between two properly conducted tests should not exceed this limit. The number of significant digits/decimal places presented is equal to that prescribed by this standard or Practice D6026. In addition, the value presented can have the same number of decimal places as the standard deviation, even if that result has more significant digits than the standard deviation.

<sup>E</sup> Both values of  $\gamma_{d,max}$  and  $w_{opt}$  have to fall within values given for the selected soil type.

TABLE 4 Summary of Single Test Results from Each Laboratory (Standard Effort Compaction)<sup>A</sup>

(1)			(2)	(3)			(4)			(5)		
Number of Test Laboratories			Test Value (Units)	Average Value			Standard Deviation			Acceptable Range of Two Results		
<i>Soil Type:</i>												
CH	CL	ML		CH	CL	ML	CH	CL	ML	CH	CL	ML
<i>Multilaboratory Results (Between-Laboratory Reproducibility):</i>												
26	26	25	$\gamma_{d,max}$ (pcf)	97.3	109.2	106.2	1.6	1.1	1.0	4.5	3.0	2.9
			$w_{opt}$ (%)	22.6	16.4	16.7	0.9	0.7	1.0	2.4	1.8	2.9

methods used (Method A, B, or C, or wet/dry preparation

<sup>4</sup> Supporting data have been filed at ASTM International Headquarters and may be obtained by requesting Research Report RR:D18-1008. Contact ASTM Customer Service at service@astm.org.

<sup>A</sup> See footnotes in **Table 3**.

method). Judgement is required when applying these estimates to another soil, method, or preparation method.

13.1.1 The data in **Table 3** are based on three replicate tests performed by each triplicate test laboratory on each soil type. The single operator and multilaboratory standard deviation show in **Table 3**, Column 4 were obtained in accordance with Practice **E691**, which recommends each testing laboratory

perform a minimum of three replicate tests. Results of two properly conducted tests performed by the same operator on the same material, using the same equipment, and in the shortest practical period of time should not differ by more than the single-operator *d2s* shown in **Table 3**, Column 5. For definition of *d2s*, see footnote D in **Table 1**. Results of two properly conducted tests performed by different operators and on different days should not differ by more than the multilaboratory *d2s* limits shown in **Table 3**, Column 5.

13.1.2 In the ASTM Reference Soils and Testing Program, many of the laboratories performed only a single test on each

Copyright by ASTM Int'l (all rights reserved); Thu Jun 11 16:16:21 EDT 2020 10

Downloaded/printed by

John Brown (Raba- Kistner Consultants, Inc) pursuant to License Agreement. No further reproductions authorized.

soil type. This is common practice in the design and construction industry. The data for each soil type in **Table 4** are based upon the first test result from the triplicate test laboratories and the single test results from the other laboratories. Results of two properly conducted tests performed by two different laboratories with different operators using different equipment and on different days should not vary by more than the  $d_{2s}$  limits shown in **Table 4**, Column 5. The results in **Tables 3 and 4** are dissimilar because the data sets are different.

13.1.3 **Table 3** presents a rigorous interpretation of triplicate test data in accordance with Practice **E691** from pre-qualified laboratories. **Table 4** is derived from test data that represents common practice.

13.1.4 *Soil Types*—Based on the multilaboratory test results the soils used in the program are described below in accordance with Practice **D2487**. In addition, the local names of the soils are given.

CH	Fat clay, CH, 99 % fines, LL=60, PI=39, grayish brown, soil had been air dried and pulverized. Local name—Vicksburg Buckshot Clay
CL	Lean clay, CL, 89 % fines, LL=33, PI=13, gray, soil had been air dried and pulverized. Local name—Annapolis Clay
ML	Silt, ML, 99 % fines, LL=27, PI=4, light brown, soil had been air dried and pulverized. Local name—Vicksburg Silt

13.2 *Bias*—There is no accepted reference values for this test method, therefore, bias cannot be determined.

## 14. Keywords

14.1 compaction characteristics; density; impact compaction; laboratory tests ; moisture-density curves; proctor test; soil; soil compaction; standard effort

## ANNEX

### (Mandatory Information)

#### A1. VOLUME OF COMPACTION MOLD

##### A1.1 Scope

A1.1.1 This annex describes the procedure for determining the volume of a compaction mold.

A1.1.2 The volume is determined by two methods, a water-filled and linear-measurement method.

A1.1.3 The water filling method for the 4-in. (106.5-mm) mold, when using a balance readable to nearest g, does not yield four significant figures for its volume, just three. Based on Practice **D6026**, this limits the density/unit weight determinations previously presented from four to three significant figures. To prevent this limitation, the water filling method has been adjusted from that presented in early versions of this test method.

##### A1.2 Apparatus

A1.2.1 In addition to the apparatus listed in Section **6** the following items are required:

A1.2.1.1 *Vernier or Dial Caliper*, having a measuring range of at least 0 to 6 in. (0 to 150 mm) and readable to at least 0.001 in. (0.02 mm).

A1.2.1.2 *Inside Micrometer (optional)*, having a measuring range of at least 2 to 12 in. (50 to 300 mm) and readable to at least 0.001 in. (0.02 mm).

A1.2.1.3 *Depth Micrometer (optional)*, having a measuring range of at least 0 to 6 in. (0 to 150 mm) and readable to at least 0.001 in. (0.02 mm).

A1.2.1.4 *Plastic or Glass Plates*—Two plastic or glass plates about 8 in. square by ¼ in. thick (200 by 200 by 6 mm).

A1.2.1.5 *Thermometer or Other Thermometric Device*, having graduation increments of 0.1°C.

A1.2.1.6 *Stopcock Grease*, or similar sealant.

A1.2.1.7 *Miscellaneous Equipment*—Bulb syringe, towels, etc.

##### A1.3 Precautions

A1.3.1 Perform this method in an area isolated from drafts or extreme temperature fluctuations.

##### A1.4 Procedure

A1.4.1 *Water-Filling Method:*

A1.4.1.1 Lightly grease the bottom of the compaction mold and place it on one of the plastic or glass plates. Lightly grease the top of the mold. Be careful not to get grease on the inside of the mold. If it is necessary to use the base plate, as noted in **10.4.7**, place the greased mold onto the base plate and secure with the locking studs.

A1.4.1.2 Determine the mass of the greased mold and both plastic or glass plates to the nearest 1 g and record,  $M_{mp}$ . When the base plate is being used in lieu of the bottom plastic or glass plate, determine the mass of the mold, base plate and a single plastic or glass plate to be used on top of the mold to the nearest 1 g and record.

A1.4.1.3 Place the mold and the bottom plastic or glass plate on a firm, level surface and fill the mold with water to slightly above its rim.

A1.4.1.4 Slide the second plate over the top surface of the mold so that the mold remains completely filled with water and air bubbles are not entrapped. Add or remove water as necessary with a bulb syringe.

A1.4.1.5 Completely dry any excess water from the outside of the mold and plates.

A1.4.1.6 Determine the mass of the mold, plates and water and record to the nearest 1 g,  $M_{mp,w}$ .

Copyright by ASTM Int'l (all rights reserved); Thu Jun 11 16:16:21 EDT 2020 11  
Downloaded/printed by

John Brown (Raba- Kistner Consultants, Inc) pursuant to License Agreement. No further reproductions authorized.



A1.4.1.7 Determine the temperature of the water in the mold to the nearest 0.1°C and record. Determine and record the density of water from the table given in Test Methods **D854** or as follows:

$$\rho_{w,c} = 1.000340382 - 7.773 \times 10^{-6} T + 4.95 \times 10^{-9} T^2 \quad (A1.1)$$

where:

$\rho_{w,c}$  = density of water, nearest 0.00001 g/cm<sup>3</sup>, and  
 $T$  = calibration test temperature, nearest 0.1°C.

A1.4.1.8 Calculate the mass of water in the mold by subtracting the mass determined in **A1.4.1.2** from the mass determined in **A1.4.1.6**.

A1.4.1.9 Calculate the volume of water by dividing the mass of water by the density of water. Record this volume to

the nearest 0.1 cm<sup>3</sup> for the 4-in. (101.6-mm) mold or nearest 1 cm<sup>3</sup> for the 6-in. (152.4-mm) mold. To determine the volume of the mold in m<sup>3</sup>, multiply the volume in cm<sup>3</sup> by 1 × 10<sup>-6</sup>. Record this volume, as prescribed.

A1.4.1.10 If the filling method is being used to determine the mold's volume and checked by linear measurement method, repeat this volume determination (**A1.4.1.3** – **A1.4.1.9**) and determine and record the average value,  $V_w$  as prescribed.

**A1.4.2 Linear Measurement Method:**

A1.4.2.1 Using either the vernier caliper or the inside micrometer (preferable), measure the inside diameter (ID) of

the mold 6 times at the top of the mold and 6 times at the bottom of the mold, spacing each of the six top and bottom measurements equally around the ID of the mold. Record the values to the nearest 0.001-in. (0.02-mm). Determine and record the average ID to the nearest 0.001-in. (0.02-mm),  $d_{avg}$ . Verify that this ID is within specified tolerances, 4.000 ± 0.016 in. (101.6 ± 0.4 mm), if not discard the mold.

A1.4.2.2 Using the vernier caliper or depth micrometer (preferably), measure the inside height of the mold attached to the base plate. In these measurements, make three or more measurements equally spaced around the ID of the mold, and preferably one in the center of the mold, but not required (used the straightedge to facilitate the later measurement and correct measurement for thickness of straightedge). Record these values to the nearest 0.001-in. (0.02-mm). Determine and

record the average of these height measurements to the nearest 0.001 in. (0.02 mm),  $h_{avg}$ . Verify that this height is within specified tolerances, 4.584 ± 0.018 in. (116.4 ± 0.5 mm), if not discard the mold.

A1.4.2.3 Calculate the volume of the mold to four significant digits in cm<sup>3</sup> as follows:

$$V_{lm} = \frac{\pi h_{avg} d_{avg}^2}{4} K_3 \quad (A1.2)$$

where:

$V_{lm}$  = volume of mold by linear measurements, to four significant digits, cm<sup>3</sup>,

$K_3$  = constant to convert measurements made in inch (in.) or mm,  
 Use 16.387 for measurements in inches.

Use 10 for measurements in mm.

$\pi$  = 3.14159,

$h_{avg}$  = average height, in. (mm), and

$d_{avg}$  = average of the top and bottom diameters, in. (mm).

A1.4.2.4 If the volume in m<sup>3</sup> is required, then multiply the above value by 10<sup>-6</sup>.

**A1.5 Comparison of Results and Standardized Volume of Mold**

A1.5.1 The volume obtained by either method should be within the volume tolerance requirements of **6.1.1** and **6.1.2**, using either or cm<sup>3</sup> to ft<sup>3</sup>. To convert cm<sup>3</sup> to ft<sup>3</sup>, divide cm<sup>3</sup> by 28 317, record to the nearest 0.0001 ft<sup>3</sup>.

A1.5.2 The difference between the two methods should not exceed 0.5 % of the nominal volume of the mold, cm<sup>3</sup> to ft<sup>3</sup>.

A1.5.3 Repeat the determination of volume, which is most suspect or both if these criteria are not met.

A1.5.4 Failure to obtain satisfactory agreement, between these methods, even after several trials is an indication the mold is badly deformed and should be replaced.

A1.5.5 Use the volume of the mold determined using the water-filling or linear method, or average of both methods as the standardized volume for calculating the moist density (see **11.4**). This value ( $V$ ) in cm<sup>3</sup> or m<sup>3</sup> shall have four significant digits. The use of a volume in ft<sup>3</sup>, along with masses in lbm shall not be regarded as a nonconformance with this standard.

Copyright by ASTM Int'l (all rights reserved); Thu Jun 11 16:16:21 EDT 2020 12  
Downloaded/printed by  
John Brown (Raba- Kistner Consultants, Inc) pursuant to License Agreement. No further reproductions authorized.

## REFERENCES

- (1) Johnson, A. W., and Sallberg, J. R., *Factors Influencing Compaction Test Results*, Highway Research Board, Bulletin 318, Publication 967, National Academy of Sciences-National Research Council, Washington, DC, 1962.
- (2) *Earth Manual*, United States Bureau of Reclamation, Part 1, Third Edition, 1998, pp. 255–260.
- (3) *Earth Manual*, United States Bureau of Reclamation, Part 2, Third Edition, 1990, USBR 5515.
- (4) Torrey, V. H., and Donaghe, R. T., “Compaction Control of Earth-Rock Mixtures: A New Approach,” *Geotechnical Testing Journal*, GTJODJ, Vol 17, No. 3, September 1994, pp. 371–386.

## SUMMARY OF CHANGES

Committee D18 has identified the location of selected changes to this standard since the last issue (D698–07<sup>e1</sup>) that may impact the use of this standard. (Approved May 1, 2012.)

- (1) Revised 6.2.2.1 and 10.4.5.

*ASTM International takes no position respecting the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any item mentioned in this standard. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, are entirely their own responsibility.*

*This standard is subject to revision at any time by the responsible technical committee and must be reviewed every five years and if not revised, either reapproved or withdrawn. Your comments are invited either for revision of this standard or for additional standards and should be addressed to ASTM International Headquarters. Your comments will receive careful consideration at a meeting of the responsible technical committee, which you may attend. If you feel that your comments have not received a fair hearing you should make your views known to the ASTM Committee on Standards, at the address shown below.*

*This standard is copyrighted by ASTM International, 100 Barr Harbor Drive, PO Box C700, West Conshohocken, PA 19428-2959, United States. Individual reprints (single or multiple copies) of this standard may be obtained by contacting ASTM at the above address or at 610-832-9585 (phone), 610-832-9555 (fax), or service@astm.org (e-mail); or through the ASTM website (www.astm.org). Permission rights to photocopy the standard may also be secured from the Copyright Clearance Center, 222 Rosewood Drive, Danvers, MA 01923, Tel: (978) 646-2600; <http://www.copyright.com/>*

Copyright by ASTM Int'l (all rights reserved); Thu Jun 11 16:16:21 EDT 2020 13  
Downloaded/printed by  
John Brown (Raba- Kistner Consultants, Inc) pursuant to License Agreement. No further reproductions authorized.

# CONSTRUCTION PLANS

## FOR

# HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY

## IN

# GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS

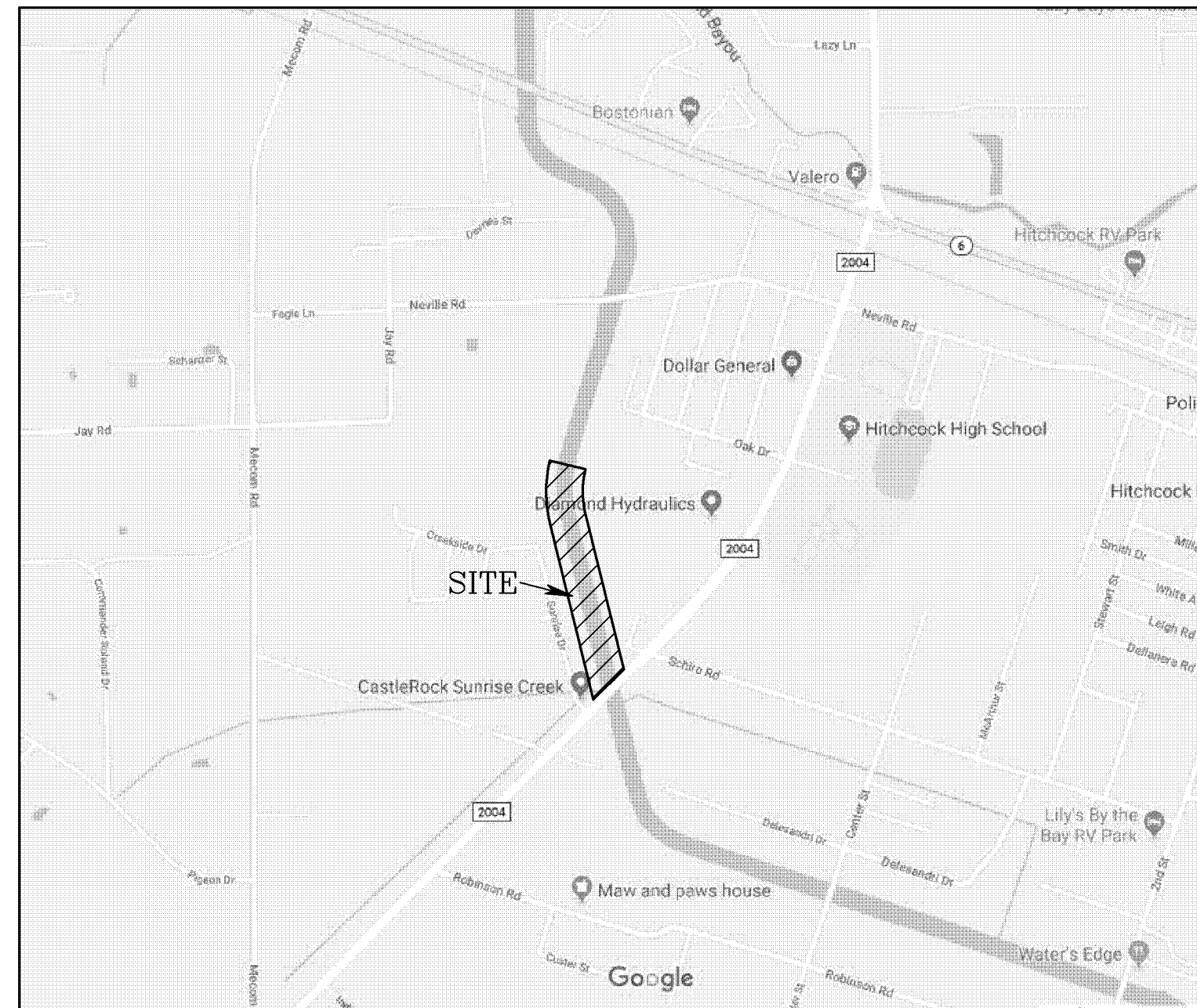


DECEMBER 2020  
PRECINCT 2

GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS

**OFFICIALS**

MARK HENRY	COUNTY JUDGE
DARRELL APFFEL	COMMISSIONER PRECINCT No. 1
JOE GIUSTI	COMMISSIONER PRECINCT No. 2
STEPHEN HOLMES	COMMISSIONER PRECINCT No. 3
KENNETH CLARK	COMMISSIONER PRECINCT No. 4
MICHAEL SHANNON, PE	COUNTY ENGINEER



NOT TO SCALE

SHEET INDEX	
SHT #	SHEET TITLE
1	COVER SHEET
2	TOPOGRAPHIC SURVEY
3	CHANNEL PLAN & PROFILE: HIGHLAND BAYOU ~ STA 0+00 TO 12+00
4	CHANNEL PLAN & PROFILE: HIGHLAND BAYOU ~ STA 12+00 TO END
5	PLAN & PROFILE: INTERCEPTOR SWALE "A" ~ STA 0+00 TO 6+96.62
6	PLAN & PROFILE: INTERCEPTOR SWALE "B" ~ STA 0+00 TO 6+90.23
7	SECTION "A"
8	SECTION "B"
9	SECTION "C"
10	SECTION "D"
11	SECTION "E"
12	PROJECT SIGN

**CONSTRUCTION GENERAL NOTES**

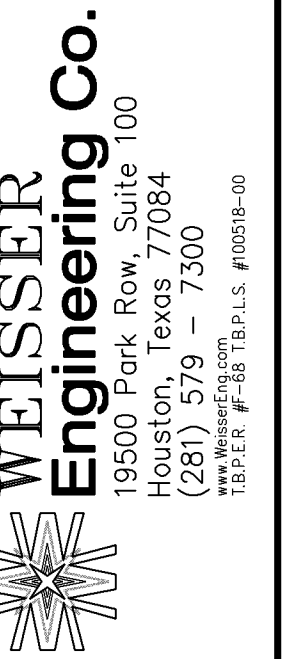
1. All construction shall conform to the Texas Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets and Bridges – Adopted November 2014.
2. The existence and locations of all underground utilities shown on the drawings were obtained from available records and are approximate. Neither the owner nor the engineer assumes any responsibility for utilities not shown or not in the location shown. The contractor shall determine the depth and location of all existing underground utilities prior to trenching and shall be required to take any precautionary measures to protect all lines shown and/or any other utilities not of record or not shown on the plans. Contractor shall be responsible for contacting all franchise and city utilities at least 48 hours prior to starting construction.
3. Any contractor/subcontractor performing work on this project shall familiarize himself with the site and shall be solely responsible for any damage to existing facilities resulting directly or indirectly from his operations. Said existing improvements shall include but not be limited to berms, ditches, fences, plants, etc. Any removal or damage to existing improvements shall be replaced or repaired by the contractor at his expense and shall be approved by the Galveston County.
4. All construction, testing and materials shall meet or exceed all standards & specifications of Galveston County.

**ENGINEER**

RABA – KISTNER  
3602 WESTCHASE DRIVE  
HOUSTON, TEXAS 77042

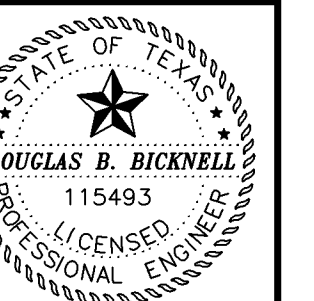
**Benchmarks:**

HARRIS-GALVESTON COASTAL SUBSIDENCE DISTRICT MON #59  
LOCATED AT SW CORNER OF THE WEST BANK OF SANTA FE, 92.5'  
NE OF CL OF HIGHWAY, 24.3' WEST OF WEST CORNER OF BANK.  
ELEV. = 22.6'



**COVER SHEET**  
 HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY  
 GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS  
 RABA-KISTNER  
 3602 WESTCHASE DRIVE  
 HOUSTON, TEXAS 77042

SCALE: AS SHOWN  
 DATE: 6/23/2020  
 DRAWN BY: DBB  
 CHK'D BY: JCP  
 JOB NO: EK051  
 FILE: HIGHLAND\_BAYOU  
 DATE SUBMITTED: 6/23/2020




**WEISSER ENGINEERING & SURVEYING, INC.**  
 REGISTRATION F-68

REVISION	DESCRIPTION	DATE	BY
1	ADD PROJECT SIGN AS SHEET 12 TO PLANSET	11/11/20	WEI
2	ADD COUNTY SEAL & OFFICIALS TO COVER SHT	12/03/20	WEI

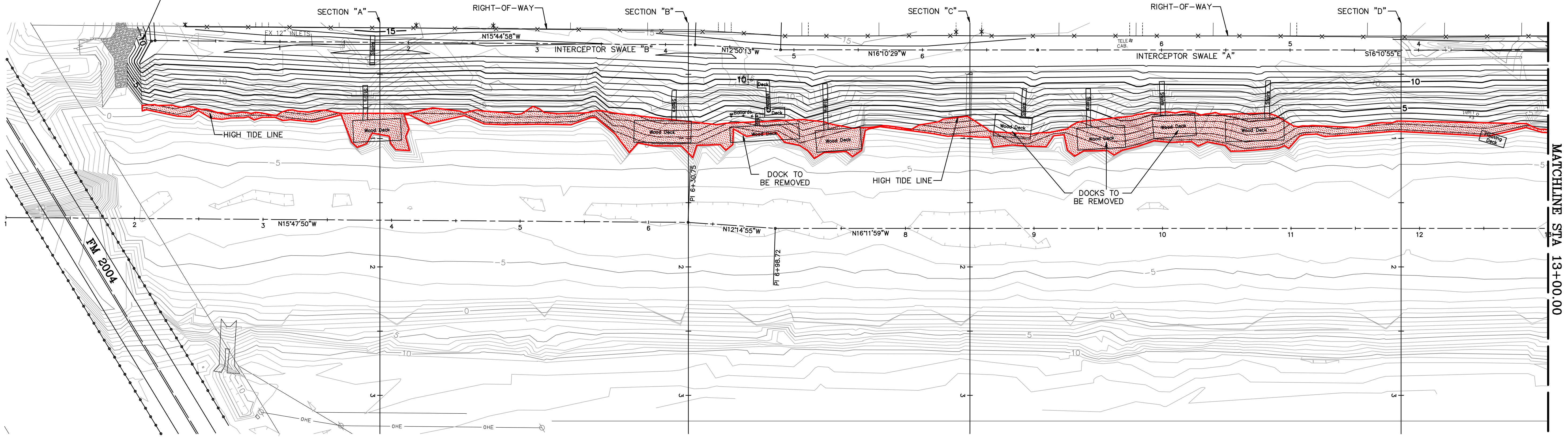
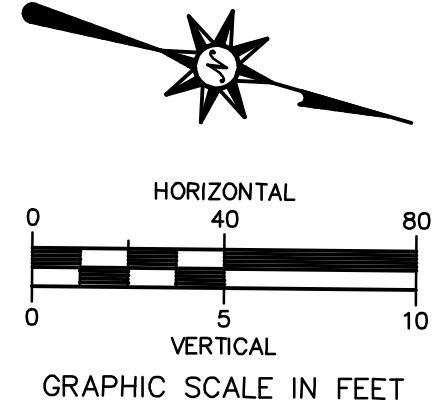
This document is released for the purpose of  
CONSTRUCTION under the authority of  
Doug Bicknell, P.E. 115493.



**LEGEND**

 CUT & FILL RELATIONSHIP BELOW HIGH TIDE LINE

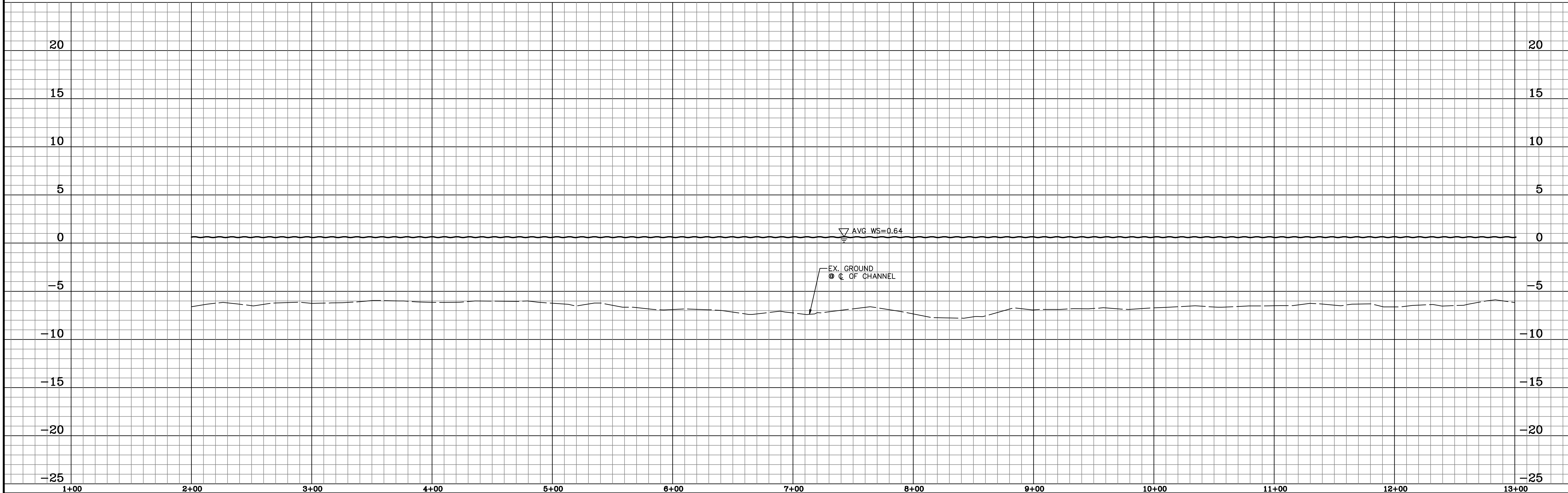
STA 2+11.64  
BEGIN HIGHLAND  
BAYOU PROJECT



Benchmarks:  
HARRIS-GALVESTON COASTAL SUBSIDENCE DISTRICT MON #59  
LOCATED AT SW CORNER OF THE WEST BANK OF SANTA FE, 92.5'  
NE OF CL OF HIGHWAY, 24.3' WEST OF WEST CORNER OF BANK.  
ELEV. = 22.6'

**HIGHLAND BAYOU**

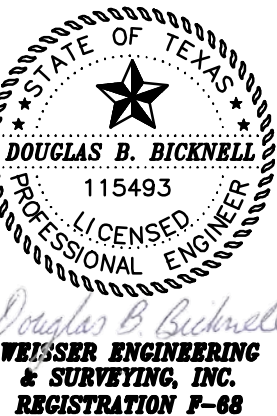
This document is released for the purpose of  
CONSTRUCTION under the authority of  
Doug Bicknell, P.E. 115493.



**WEISSER Engineering Co.**  
19500 Park Row, Suite 100  
Houston, Texas 77084  
(281) 579 - 7300  
TRAFFIC #8123.PLS, P0028-00

**CHANNEL PLAN & PROFILE**  
HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY  
GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS  
RABA-KISTNER DRIVE  
9602 WESTCHASE DRIVE  
HOUSTON, TEXAS 77042

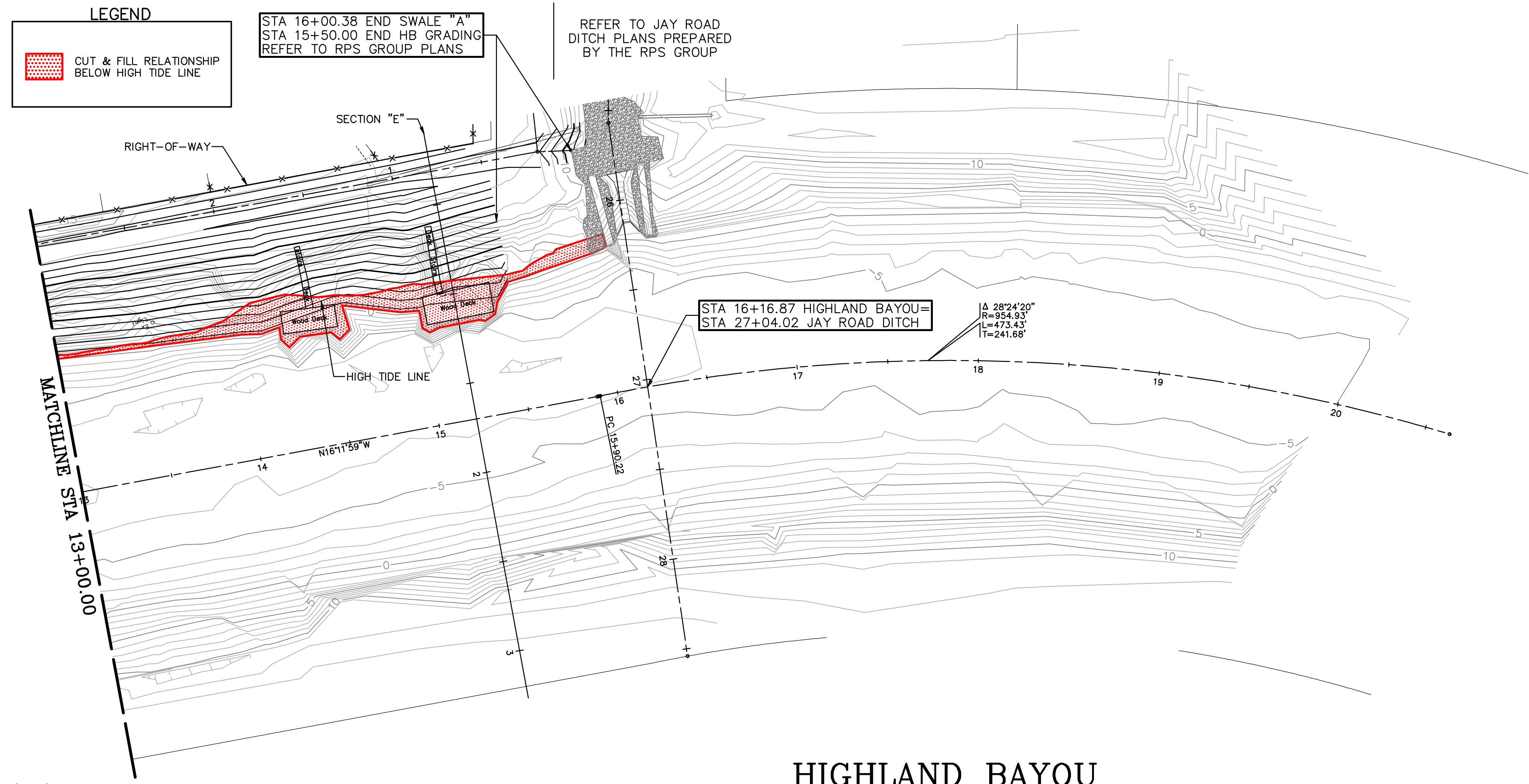
SCALE: AS SHOWN  
DATE: 12/3/2020  
DRAWN BY: DBB  
CHK'D BY: JCP  
JOB NO: EK051  
FILE: HIGHLAND BAYOU  
DATE SUBMITTED: 12/3/2020



REVISION	DESCRIPTION	DATE BY
1	ADD REMOVAL OF FOUR DOCKS TO SHEET 3	12/03/20 WEI

SHEET  
**3**

C:\Users\jcp\OneDrive\Documents\12/3/2020 WEISSER.dwg  
12/03/20 10:56:16 AM



HIGHLAND BAYOU

Benchmarks:  
 HARRIS-GALVESTON COASTAL SUBSIDENCE DISTRICT MON #59  
 LOCATED AT SW CORNER OF THE WEST BANK OF SANTA FE, 92.5'  
 NE OF CL OF HIGHWAY, 24.3' WEST OF WEST CORNER OF BANK.  
 ELEV. = 22.6'

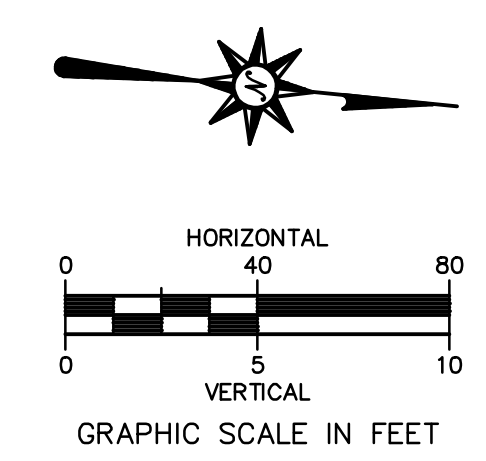
**SURFACE TO SURFACE VOLUME REPORT**  
 Project: Overall Cut & Fill for Highland Bayou  
 Report Generated: Friday, November 01, 2019 7:39:15 AM  
 Where the second surface is above the first the volume is reported as fill.  
 Where the second surface is below the first the volume is reported as excavation.

Shrinkage/swell factors:	Excavation	1.0000	Fill	1.0000
First Surface Layer Name	Number of Points	Second Surface Layer Name	Number of Points	
TOPO	2,962	1-CHANNEL DTM	247	

Volume limited to that within the constraining boundary - Object 18121  
 Area within boundary: 112,530,3817 SQ FT (2.5833 ACRES)  
 Total triangulated area: 112,398,6197 SQ FT (2.5803 ACRES)

Excavation Volume (yd3)	Fill Volume (yd3)
5,916.3	415.0

Net Difference: 5,501.3 yd3 Waste



**SURFACE TO SURFACE VOLUME REPORT**  
 Project: Cut & Fill relationship below High Tide Line  
 Report Generated: Friday, November 01, 2019 7:40:41 AM  
 Where the second surface is above the first the volume is reported as fill.  
 Where the second surface is below the first the volume is reported as excavation.

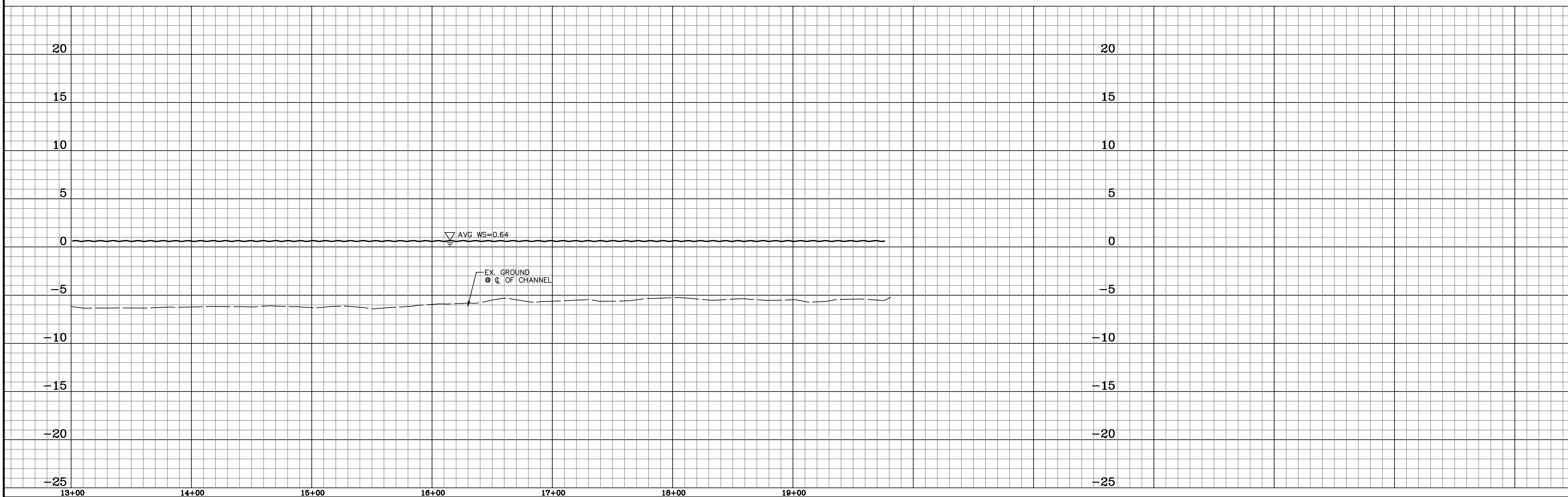
Shrinkage/swell factors:	Excavation	1.0000	Fill	1.0000
First Surface Layer Name	Number of Points	Second Surface Layer Name	Number of Points	
TOPO	2,962	1-CHANNEL DTM	247	

Volume limited to that within the constraining boundary - Object 18541  
 Area within boundary: 17,428,8779 SQ FT (0.4001 ACRES)  
 Total triangulated area: 27,744,0299 SQ FT (0.6369 ACRES)

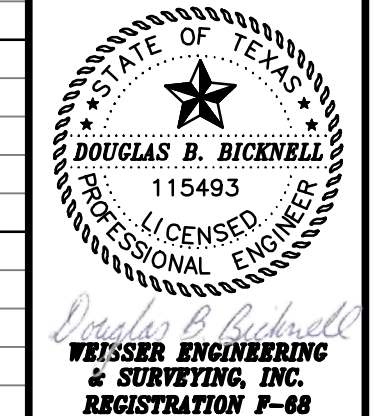
Excavation Volume (yd3)	Fill Volume (yd3)
1,277.9	0.0

Net Difference: 1,277.9 yd3 Waste

This document is released for the purpose of  
 CONSTRUCTION under the authority of  
 Doug Bicknell, P.E. 115493.



SCALE: AS SHOWN  
 DATE: 12/3/2020  
 DRAWN BY: DBB  
 CHK'D BY: JCP  
 JOB NO: EK051  
 FILE: HIGHLAND BAYOU  
 DATE SUBMITTED: 12/3/2020



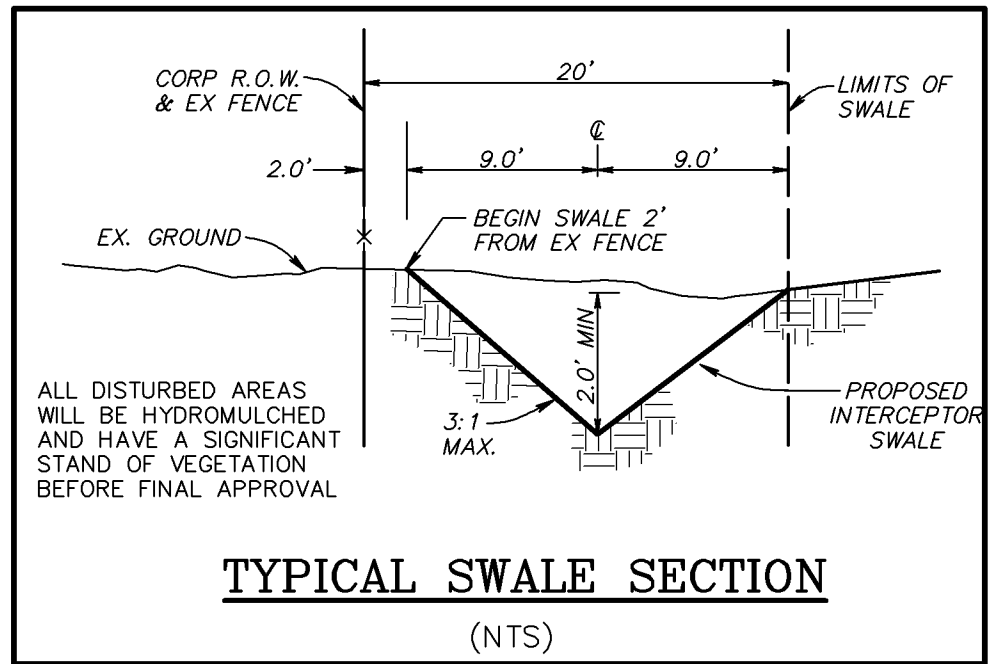
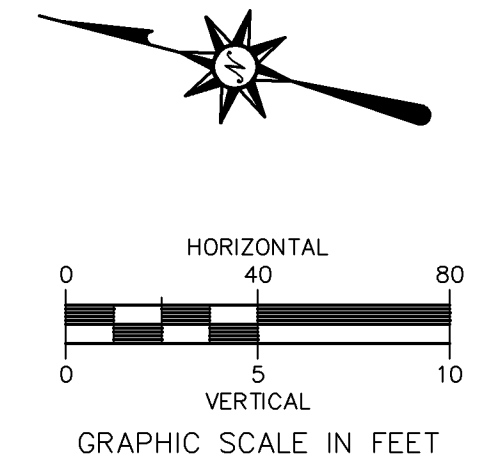
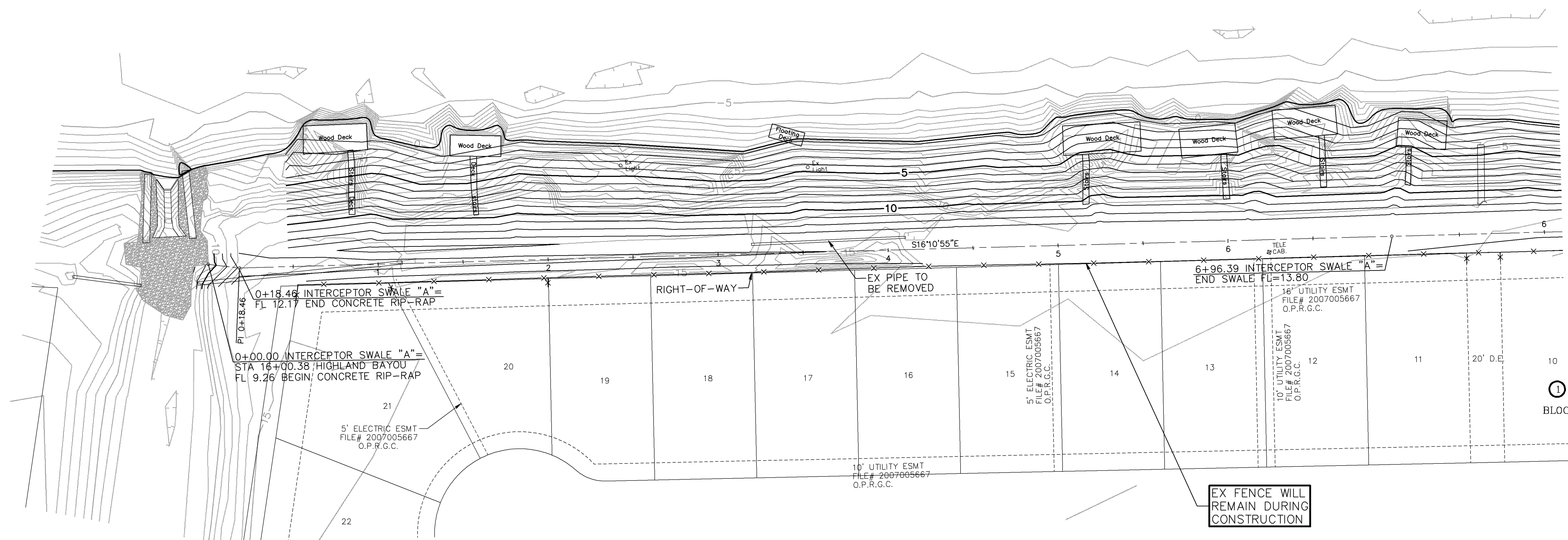
REVISION	DATE	BY	DESCRIPTION

**WEISSER Engineering Co.**  
 19500 Park Row, Suite 100  
 Houston, Texas 77084  
 (281) 579 - 7300  
 TRAILER #281-579-00

**CHANNEL PLAN & PROFILE**  
 HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY  
 GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS  
 RABA-KISTNER DRIVE  
 HOUSTON, TEXAS 77042

C:\Users\jgibson\OneDrive\Desktop\118\_Weisser.dwg  
 Thu Dec 03 10:27:28 2020

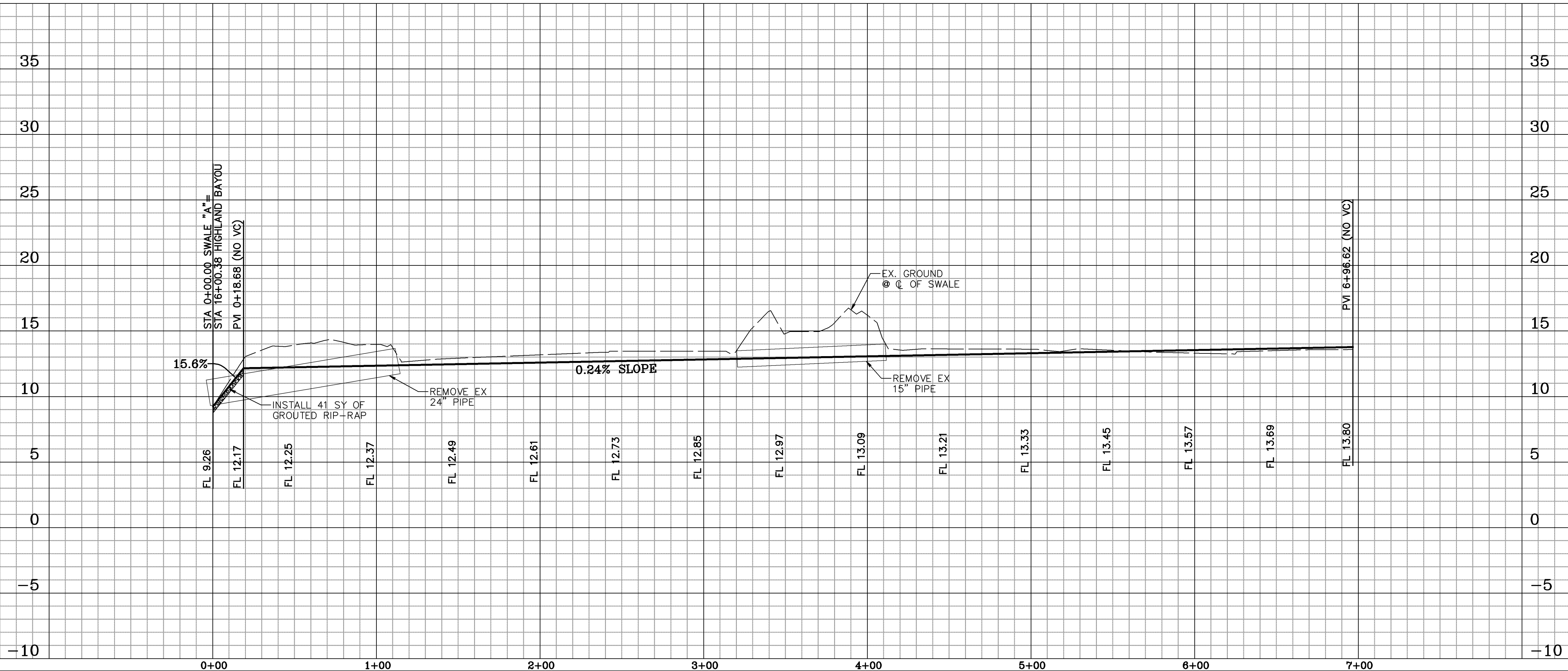




Benchmarks:  
 HARRIS-GALVESTON COASTAL SUBSIDENCE DISTRICT MON #59  
 LOCATED AT SW CORNER OF THE WEST BANK OF SANTA FE, 92.5'  
 NE OF CL OF HIGHWAY, 24.3' WEST OF WEST CORNER OF BANK.  
 ELEV. = 22.6'

### INTERCEPTOR SWALE "A"

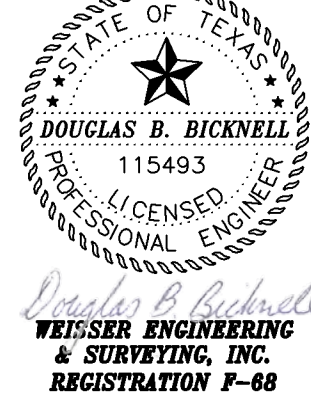
This document is released for the purpose of  
 CONSTRUCTION under the authority of  
 Doug Bicknell, P.E. 115493.



**WEISSER Engineering Co.**  
 19500 Park Row, Suite 100  
 Houston, Texas 77084  
 (281) 579 - 7300  
 TRAFFIC #1218.PLS, 1/2008-00

**INTERCEPTOR PLAN & PROFILE**  
 HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY  
 GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS  
 RABA-KISTNER DRIVE  
 9602 WESTCHASE DRIVE  
 HOUSTON, TEXAS 77042

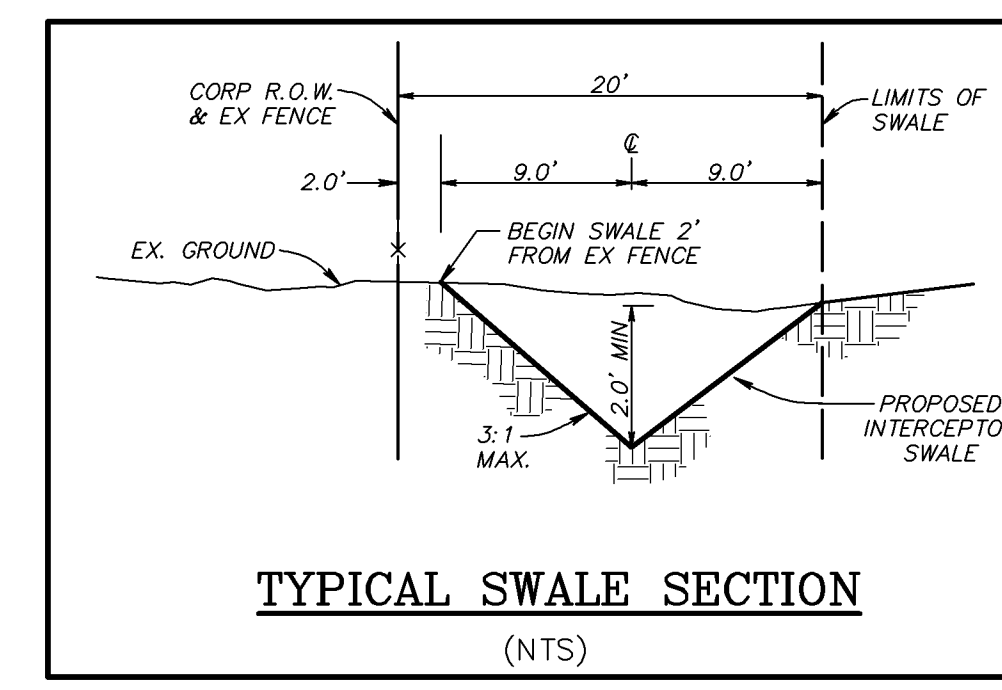
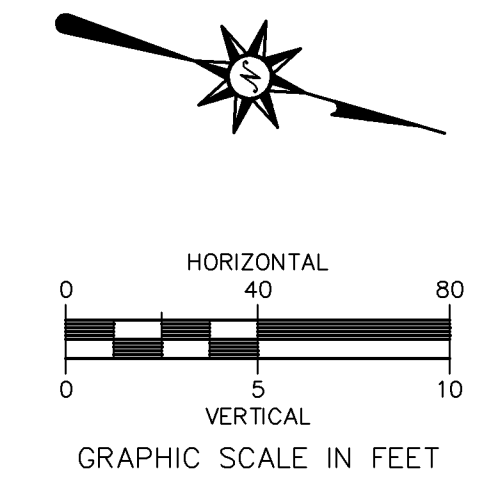
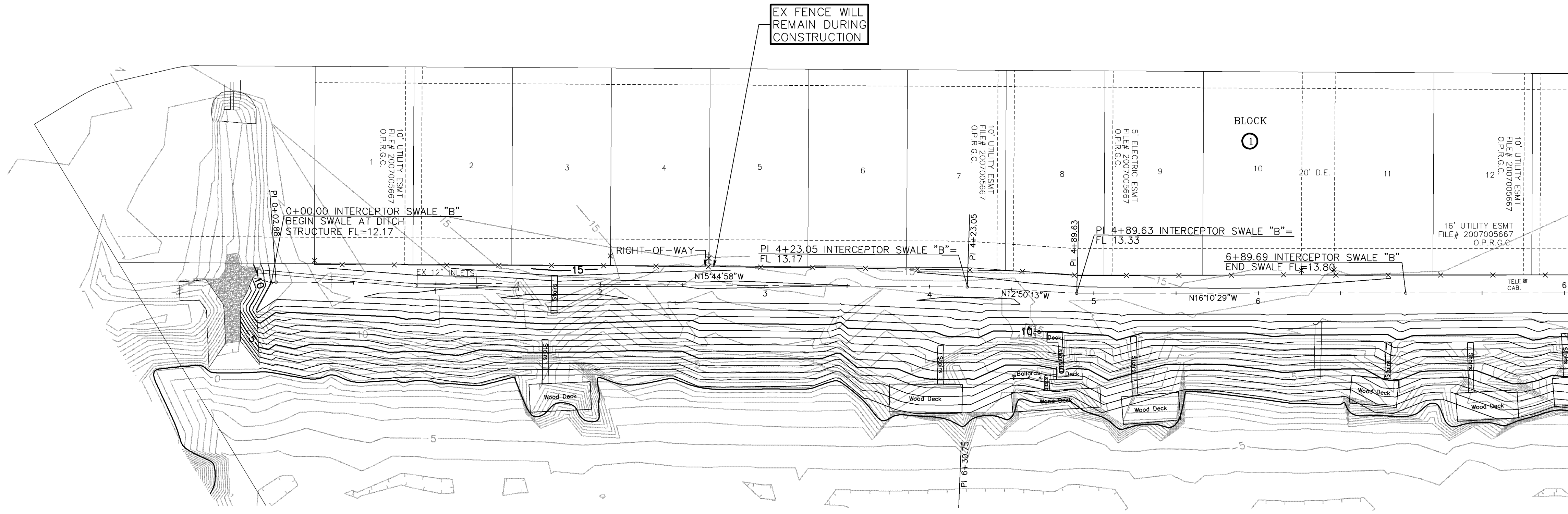
SCALE: AS SHOWN  
 DATE: 12/3/2020  
 DRAWN BY: DBB  
 CHK'D BY: JCP  
 JOB NO: EK051  
 FILE: HIGHLAND BAYOU  
 DATE SUBMITTAL: 12/3/2020



REVISION	DESCRIPTION	DATE	BY

SHEET  
5

C:\Users\jcp\OneDrive\Desktop\1218 Weisser.rvt  
 Thu Dec 03 11:24:02 2020

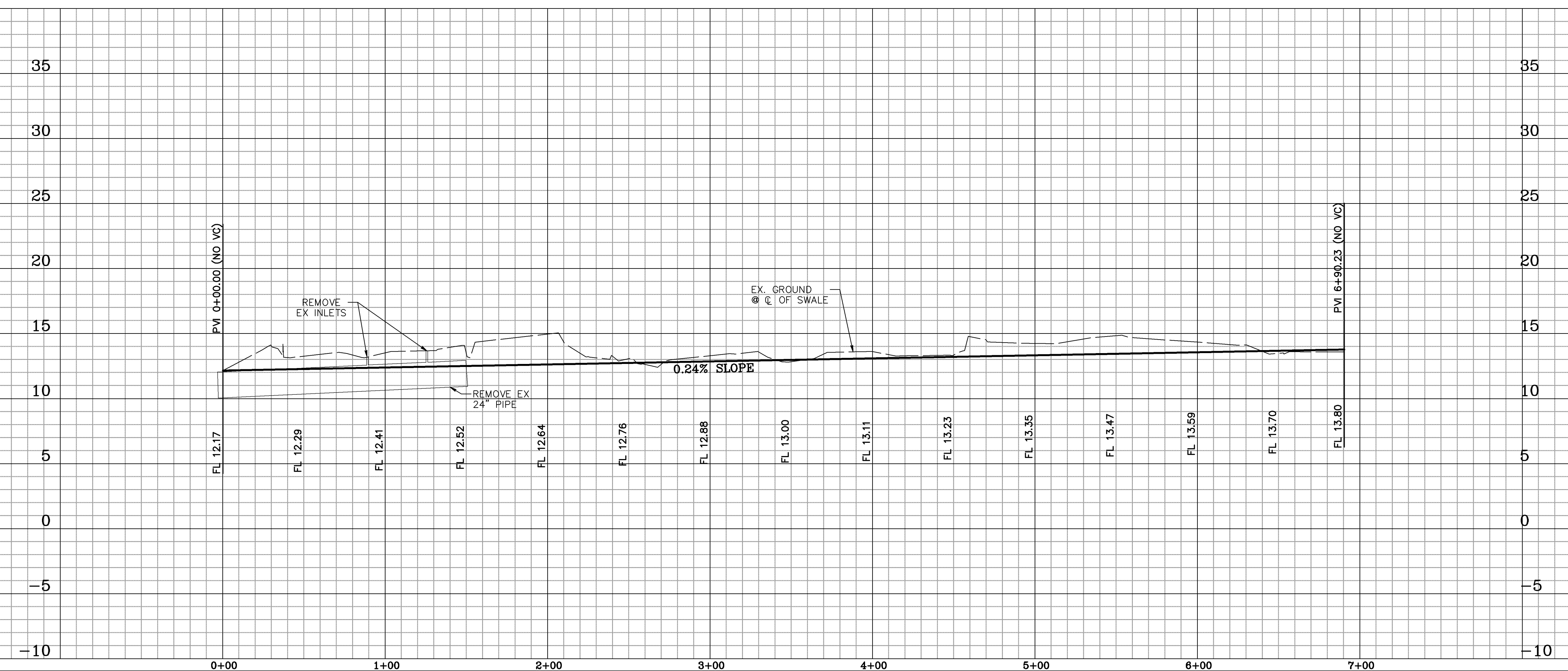


- NOTES:**
- 1) EXISTING WROUGHT IRON FENCE IS TO REMAIN IN PLACE DURING CONSTRUCTION. THE CONTRACTOR IS RESPONSIBLE FOR ANY DAMAGES
  - 2) ALL OF THE DISTURBED AREAS WILL BE HYDROMULCHED AND HAVE A SIGNIFICANT STAND OF VEGETATION BEFORE RECEIVING FINAL APPROVAL

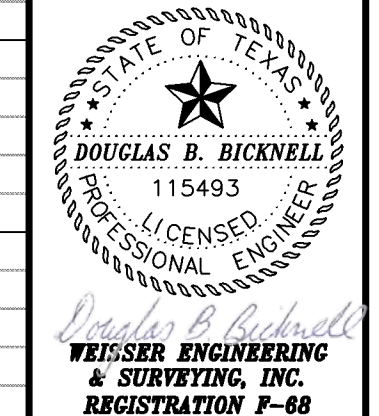
### INTERCEPTOR SWALE "B"

**Benchmarks:**  
 HARRIS-GALVESTON COASTAL SUBSIDENCE DISTRICT MON #59  
 LOCATED AT SW CORNER OF THE WEST BANK OF SANTA FE, 92.5'  
 NE OF CL OF HIGHWAY, 24.3' WEST OF WEST CORNER OF BANK.  
 ELEV. = 22.6'

This document is released for the purpose of  
 CONSTRUCTION under the authority of  
 Doug Bicknell, P.E. 115493.



SCALE: AS SHOWN  
 DATE: 12/3/2020  
 DRAWN BY: DBB  
 CHK'D BY: JCP  
 JOB NO: EK051  
 FILE: HIGHLAND BAYOU  
 DATE SUBMITTAL: 12/3/2020

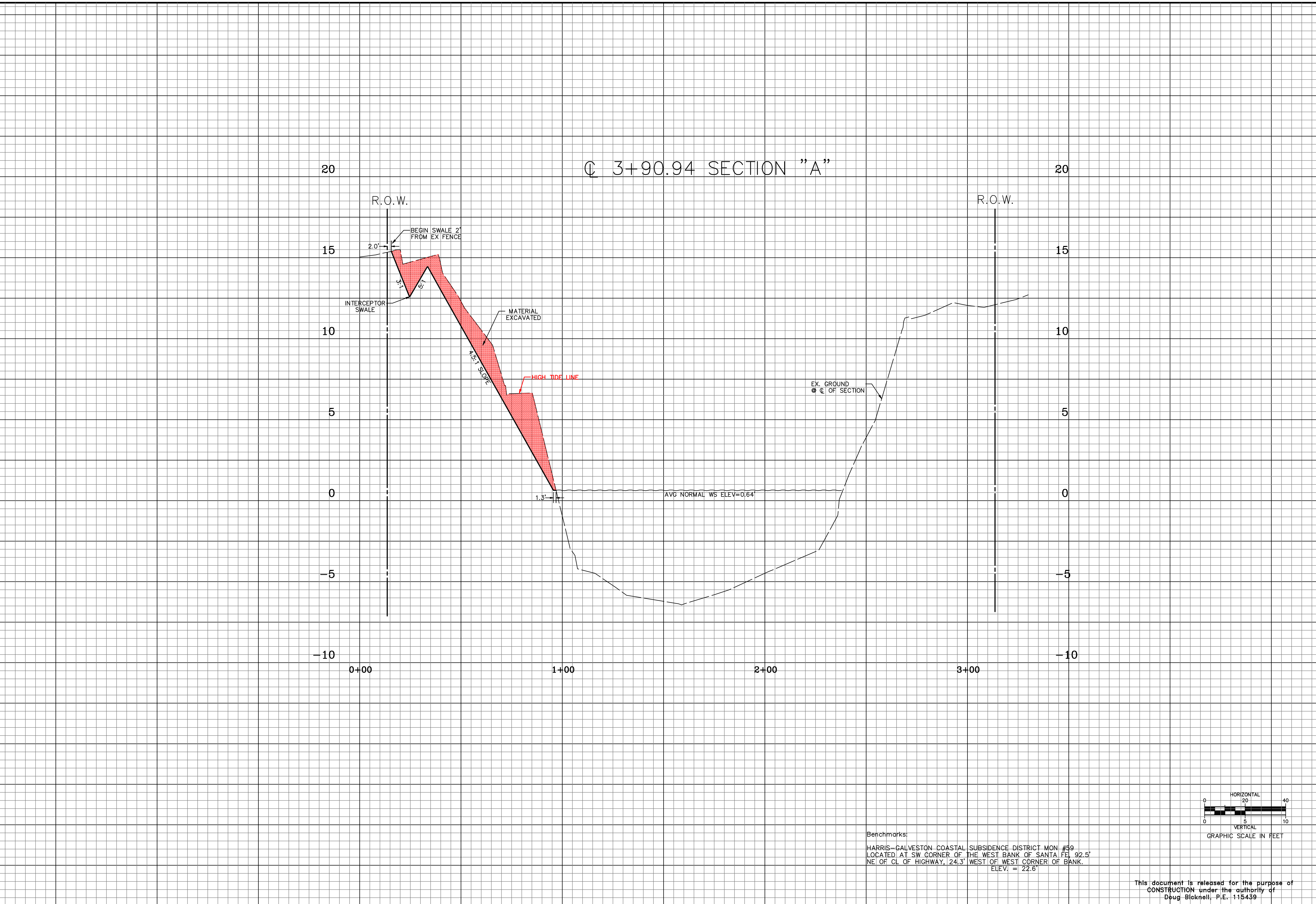


REVISION	DESCRIPTION	DATE	BY

**INTERCEPTOR PLAN & PROFILE**  
 HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY  
 GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS  
 RABA-KISTNER DRIVE  
 3602 WESTCHASE DRIVE  
 HOUSTON, TEXAS 77042

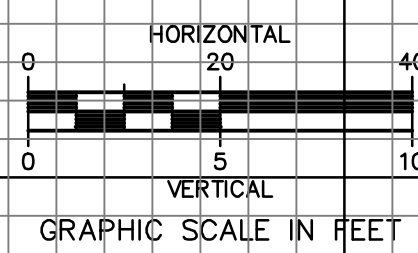
**WEISSER Engineering Co.**  
 19500 Park Row, Suite 100  
 Houston, Texas 77084  
 (281) 579 - 7300  
 TRAFFIC #12345, #6789-00

C:\Users\jgibson\OneDrive\Documents\12/3/2020 10:28:19 AM Weisser.dwg



③ 3+90.94 SECTION "A"

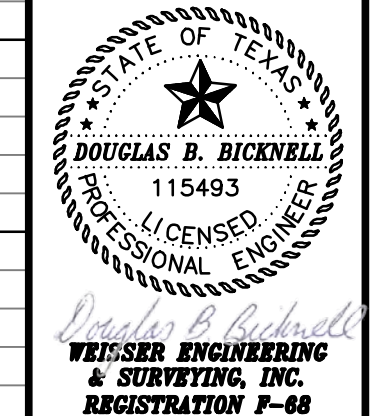
**Benchmarks:**  
 HARRIS-GALVESTON COASTAL SUBSIDENCE DISTRICT MON #59  
 LOCATED AT SW CORNER OF THE WEST BANK OF SANTA FE, 92.5'  
 NE OF CL OF HIGHWAY, 24.3' WEST OF WEST CORNER OF BANK.  
 ELEV. = 22.6'



**WEISSER Engineering Co.**  
 19500 Park Row, Suite 100  
 Houston, Texas 77084  
 (281) 579 - 7300  
 TX REG. #12814, P.0028-00

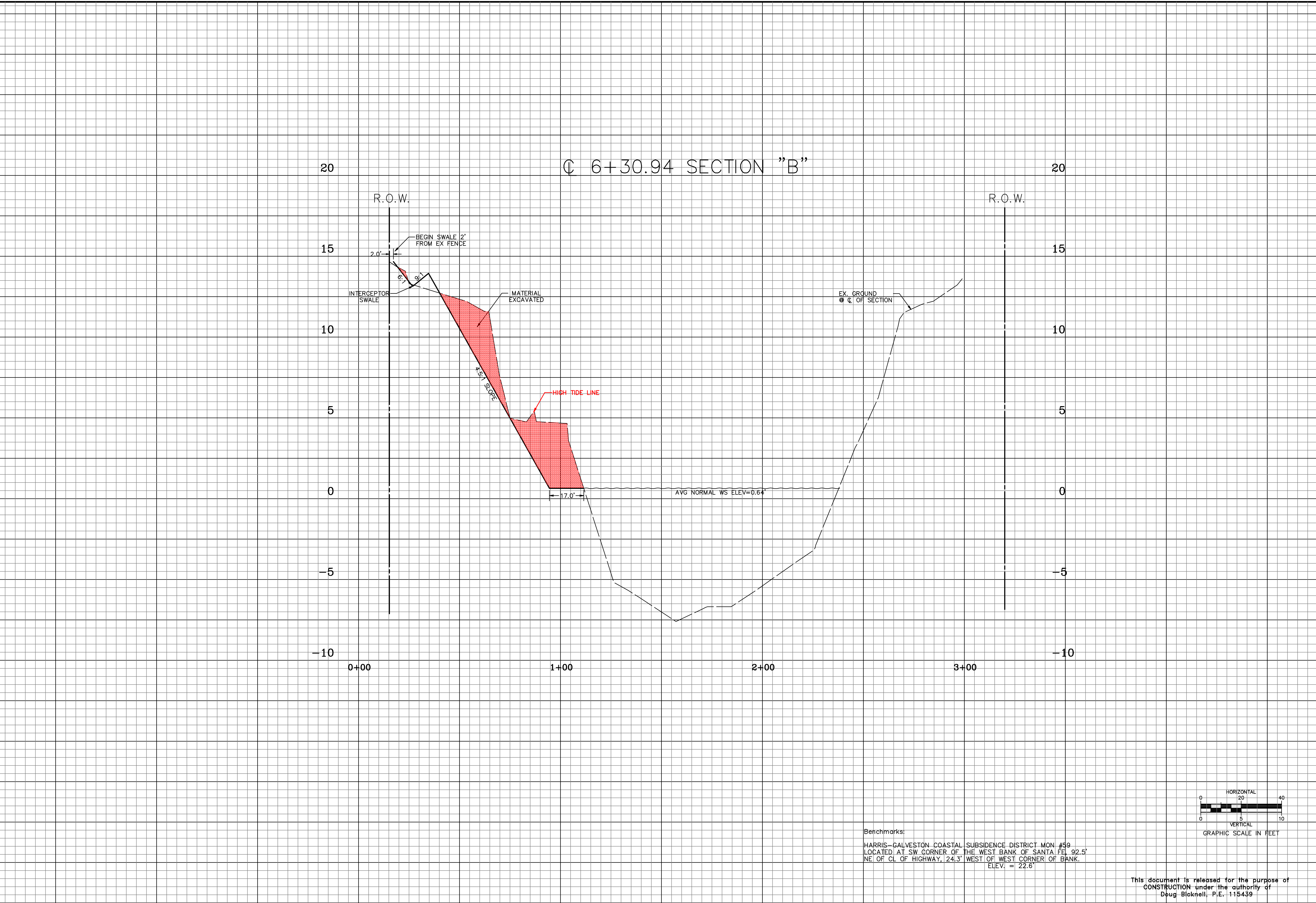
**PROPOSED CHANNEL CROSS-SECTIONS**  
 HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY  
 GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS  
 RABA-KISTNER  
 9602 WESTCHASE DRIVE  
 HOUSTON, TEXAS 77042

SCALE: AS SHOWN
DATE: 12/3/2020
DRAWN BY: DBB
CHK'D BY: JCP
JOB NO: EK051
FILE: HIGHLAND BAYOU
DATE SUBMITTAL: 12/3/2020



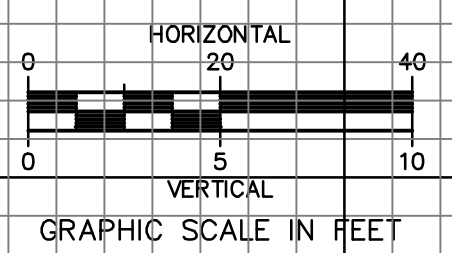
REVISION	DESCRIPTION	DATE	BY

This document is released for the purpose of  
 CONSTRUCTION under the authority of  
 Doug Bicknell, P.E. 115439



© 6+30.94 SECTION "B"

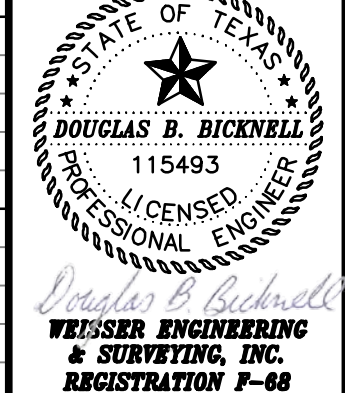
Benchmarks:  
 HARRIS-GALVESTON COASTAL SUBSIDENCE DISTRICT MON #59  
 LOCATED AT SW CORNER OF THE WEST BANK OF SANTA FE, 92.5'  
 NE OF CL OF HIGHWAY, 24.3' WEST OF WEST CORNER OF BANK.  
 ELEV. = 22.8'



**WEISSER Engineering Co.**  
 19500 Park Row, Suite 100  
 Houston, Texas 77084  
 (281) 579 - 7300  
 TX REG. #12345, P.0028-00

**PROPOSED CHANNEL CROSS-SECTIONS**  
 HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY  
 GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS  
 RABA-KISTNER DRIVE  
 9602 WESTCHASE DRIVE  
 HOUSTON, TEXAS 77042

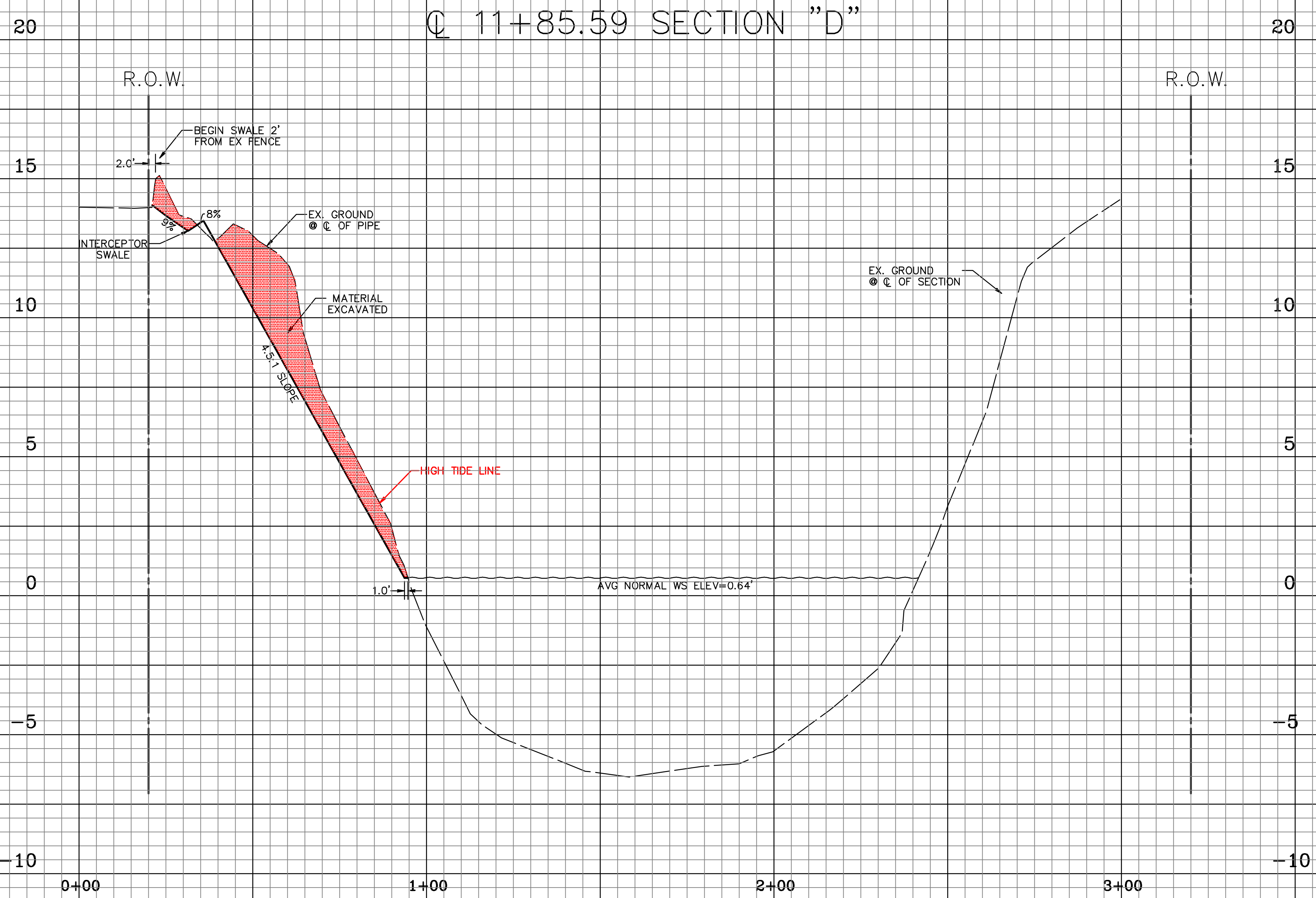
SCALE: AS SHOWN
DATE: 12/3/2020
DRAWN BY: DBB
CHK'D BY: JCP
JOB NO: EK051
FILE: HIGHLAND BAYOU
DATE SUBMITTAL: 12/3/2020



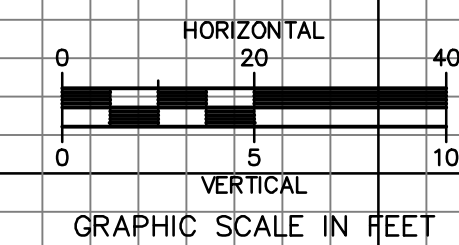
REVISION	DATE	BY	DESCRIPTION

This document is released for the purpose of  
 CONSTRUCTION under the authority of  
 Doug Bicknell, P.E. 115439



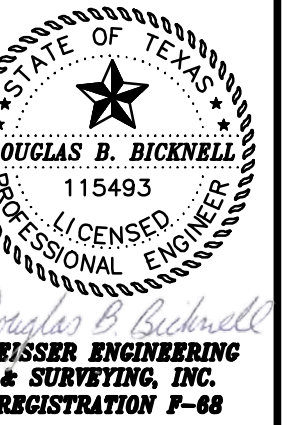


Benchmarks:  
 HARRIS-GALVESTON COASTAL SUBSIDENCE DISTRICT MON #59  
 LOCATED AT SW CORNER OF THE WEST BANK OF SANTA FE 92.5'  
 NE OF CL OF HIGHWAY, 24.3' WEST OF WEST CORNER OF BANK.  
 ELEV. = 22.6'



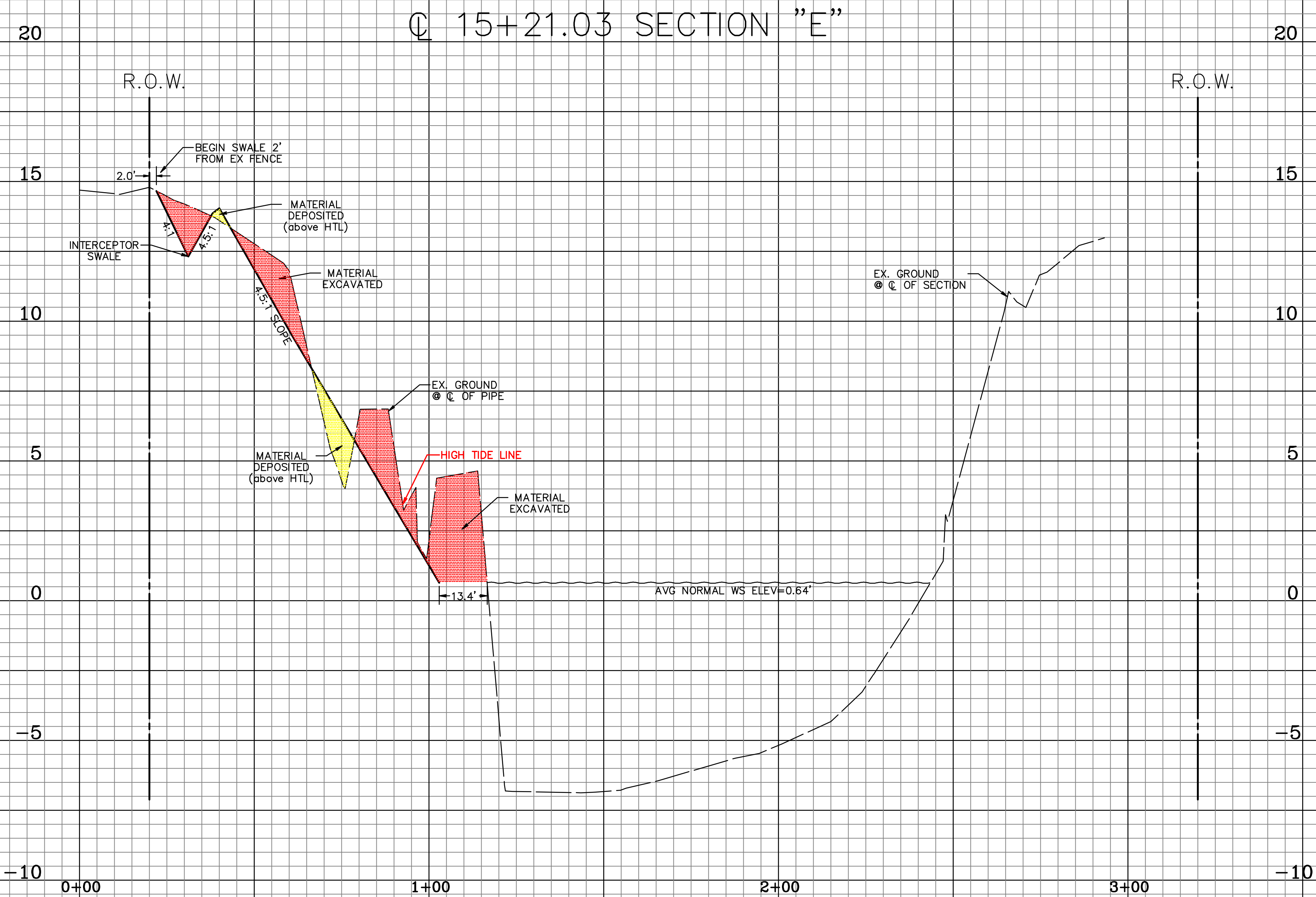
This document is released for the purpose of  
 CONSTRUCTION under the authority of  
 Doug Bleknell, P.E. 115439

SCALE: AS SHOWN
DATE: 12/3/2020
DRAWN BY: DBB
CHK'D BY: JCP
JOB NO: EK051
FILE: HIGHLAND BAYOU
DATE SUBMITTAL: 12/3/2020

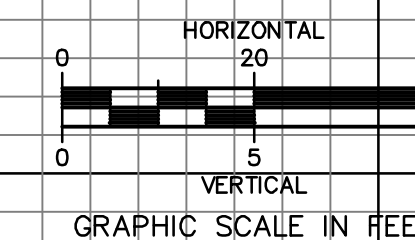


REVISION	DATE	BY	DESCRIPTION

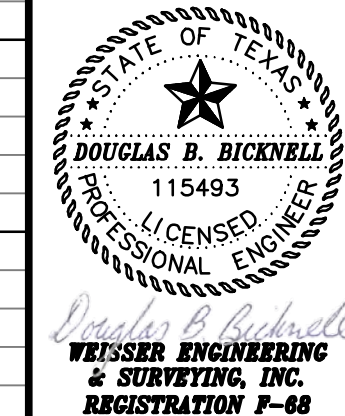
\\weisserserver\projects\115439\115439.dwg  
 2/11/2021 10:20:28 AM



Benchmarks:  
 HARRIS-GALVESTON COASTAL SUBSIDENCE DISTRICT MON #59  
 LOCATED AT SW CORNER OF THE WEST BANK OF SANTA FE, 92.5'  
 NE OF CL OF HIGHWAY, 24.3' WEST OF WEST CORNER OF BANK.  
 ELEV. = 22.6'



SCALE: AS SHOWN
DATE: 12/3/2020
DRAWN BY: DBB
CHK'D BY: JCP
JOB NO: EK051
FILE: HIGHLAND BAYOU
DATE SUBMITTAL: 12/3/2020



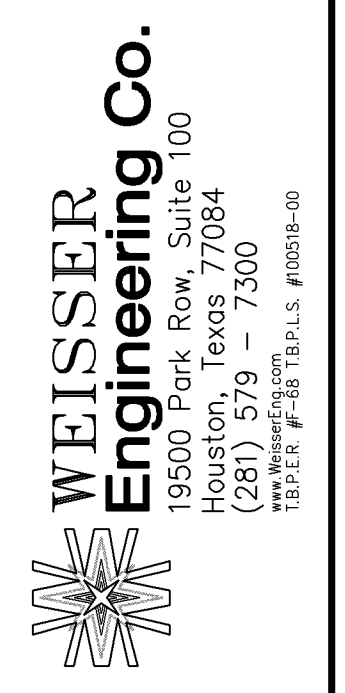
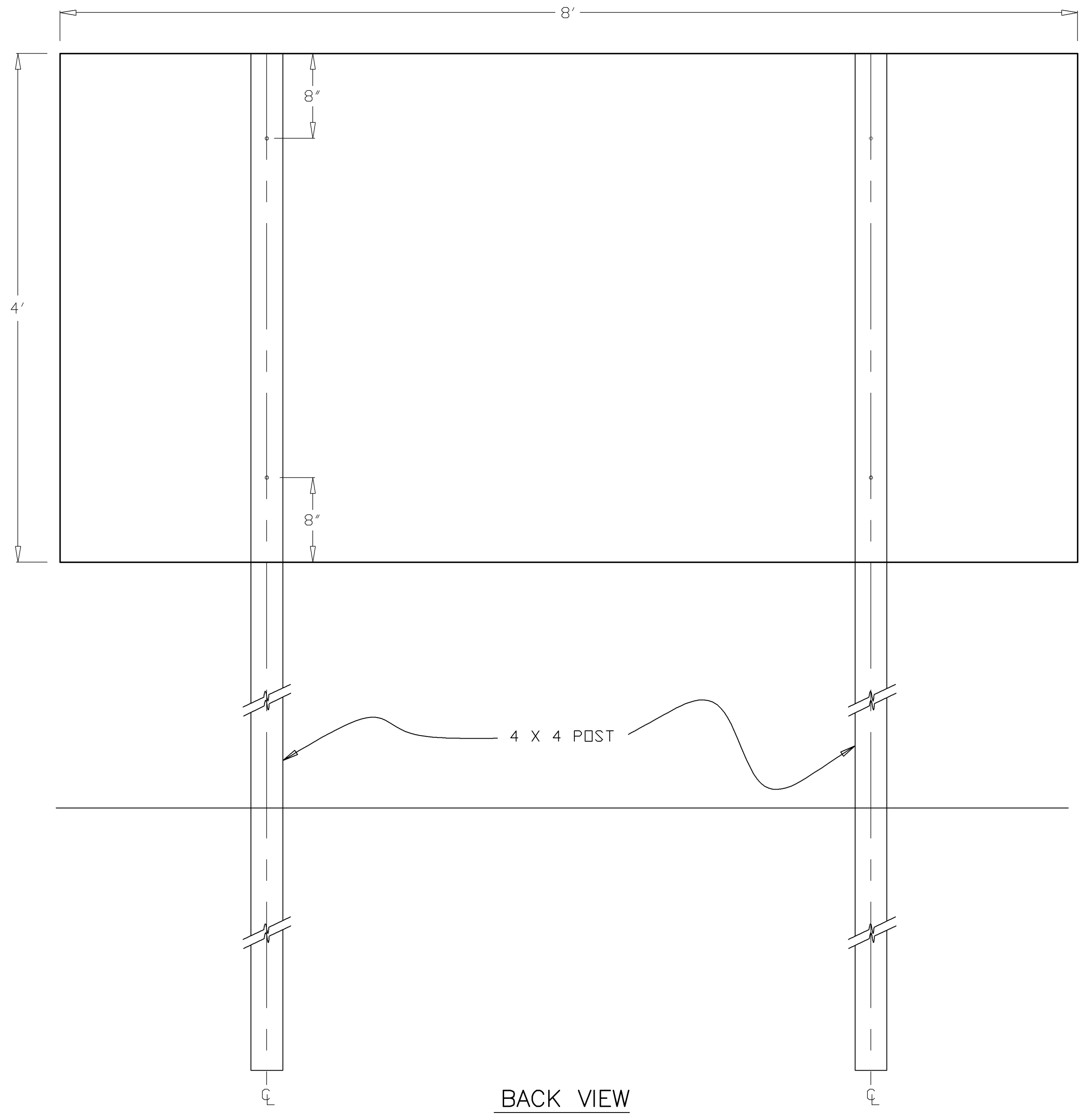
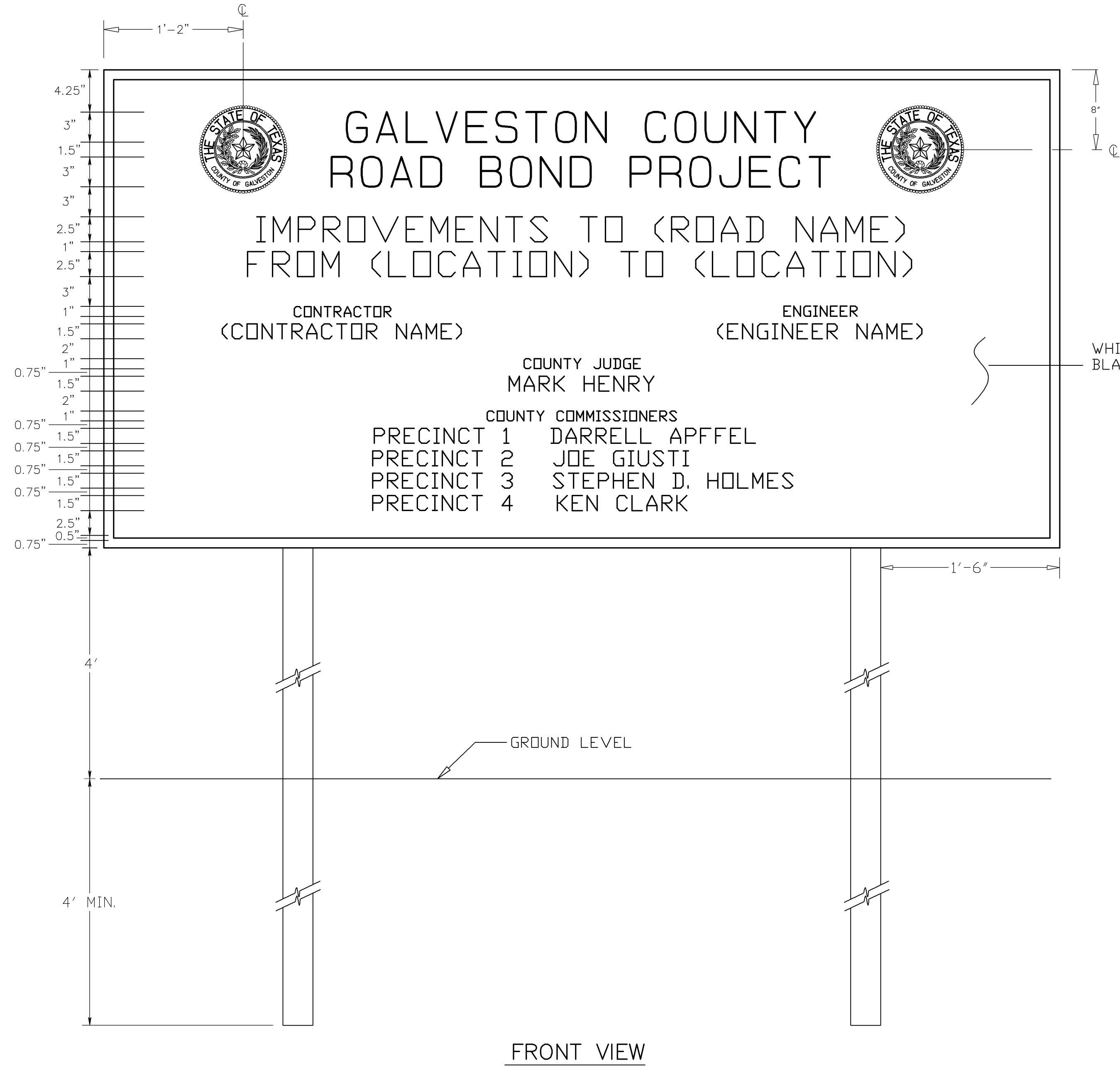
REVISION	DESCRIPTION	DATE	BY

This document is released for the purpose of  
 CONSTRUCTION under the authority of  
 Doug Bicknell, P.E. 115439

**PROPOSED CHANNEL CROSS-SECTIONS**  
 HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY  
 GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS  
 RABA-KISTNER DRIVE  
 HOUSTON, TEXAS 77042

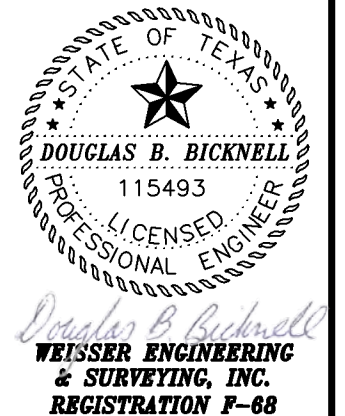
**WEISSER Engineering Co.**  
 19500 Park Row, Suite 100  
 Houston, Texas 77084  
 (281) 579 - 7300  
 TX REG. # 00008-00

A:\Projects\12/3/20\12/3/20\_115439\_Weisser.dwg  
 PLOT DATE: 12/11/2020 10:20:10 AM



**PROJECT SIGN**  
HIGHLAND BAYOU SLOPE STABILITY  
GALVESTON COUNTY, TEXAS  
RABA-KISTNER DRIVE  
9602 WESTCHASE DRIVE  
HOUSTON, TEXAS 77042

SCALE: NO SCALE  
DATE: 12/3/2020  
DRAWN BY: DBB  
CHK'D BY: JCP  
JOB NO: EK051  
FILE: Highland Bayou  
DATE SUBMITTED: 12/3/2020



REVISION	DESCRIPTION	DATE	BY